

МІНІСТЕРСТВО ОСВІТИ І НАУКИ УКРАЇНИ

**Державний заклад: «Південноукраїнський національний педагогічний університет
імені К. Д. Ушинського»**

К. О. Мулик, О. Б. Алексєєва

**ПРАКТИКУМ
З УСНОГО ТА ПИСЕМНОГО МОВЛЕННЯ
(ENGLISH)**

Навчальний посібник

Одеса 2015

Рекомендовано вченою радою ДЗ «Південноукраїнський національний педагогічний університет ім. К.Д. Ушинського» (протокол № 10 від “26”, березня 2015 р.)

Рецензенти:

М.О. Князян - доктор педагогічних наук, професор кафедри французької філології ОНУ ім. І.І. Мечникова.

Л.В. Строченко - кандидат філологічних наук, доцент кафедри лексикології та стилістики англійської мови ОНУ ім. І.І. Мечникова.

К. О. Мулик, О. Б. Алексєєва

ПРАКТИКУМ З УСНОГО ТА ПИСЕМНОГО МОВЛЕННЯ: навч. посібник для студентів педагогічних університетів / К. О. Мулик, О. Б. Алексєєва. – Одеса, 2015. – 180 с.

Навчальний посібник ґрунтується на принципах взаємопов’язаного і взаємозалежного навчання видам мовленнєвої діяльності у процесі вивчення англійської мови; використання перекладу як засобу, а письма як цілі навчання; свідомого сприйняття і засвоєння іншомовного матеріалу.

Матеріали посібника можуть бути використані в процесі підготовки майбутніх учителів у вищих навчальних закладах; під час розробки навчальних програм, методичних, навчальних посібників для вищих навчальних педагогічних закладів; для забезпечення мовленнєвої практики студентів.

ПЕРЕДМОВА

Входження України у загальноєвропейський освітній простір висуває нові вимоги щодо впровадження іноземних мов та робить необхідним оволодіння ними. У державних документах із проблем освіти наголошується на необхідності формування нової генерації педагогічних кадрів, підготовленої до якісного забезпечення освітніх потреб особистості, розвитку її інтелектуального та культурного потенціалу. Згідно вимог і принципів Болонської декларації, організації навчального процесу у вищих навчальних закладах, курс з практики усного та писемного мовлення є одним з основних дисциплін, які вивчаються у педагогічних університетах на денній, та заочній формах навчання, що зумовлено професійною значущістю знань, вмінь та навичок з практики мовлення.

Структура і зміст навчального посібника з практики усного та писемного мовлення побудовані відповідно з основними завданнями впровадження кредитно-модульної системи підготовки фахівців, тобто з урахуванням змістових модулів навчання з курсу практики усного та писемного мовлення, узгодженням кредитних систем оцінювання студента, що спрямовано на створення умов для вільного переміщення освітян на теренах Європи.

Навчальний посібник "Практикум з усного та писемного мовлення" розраховано на студентів денної та заочної форм навчання, які навчаються за педагогічним фахом.

Посібник розроблено з урахуванням принципів гуманізації та демократизації освіти, на основі концепції полікультурності; базується на новітніх теоретичних здобутках і практичному досвіді. Наданий посібник передбачає послідовність та наступність у вивченні матеріалу упродовж усіх років навчання, підкреслює необхідність поступового перенесення головної уваги з формування мовленнєвих навичок на розвиток мовленнєвих умінь.

Посібник зорієнтован на практичне використання мови та формування мовленнєвих навичок і вмінь.

Він носить професійно орієнтований характер, тому його мета і зміст визначаються в першу чергу професійними, комунікативними та пізнавальними потребами майбутнього вчителя.

Метою посібника є формування у студентів професійної компетенції шляхом ознайомлення їх з різними методами і засобами навчання іноземної мови та залучення до виконання професійно - орієнтованих завдань; формувати вміння міжособистісного спілкування, необхідні для повноцінного функціонування як у навчальному середовищі, так і за його межами, що сприяє формуванню їх світогляду та ціннісних орієнтацій, розвитку мислення, пам'яті, уяви.

Навчання різних видів мовленнєвої діяльності має проводитися на основі сформованих мовних навичок: фонетичних, лексичних та граматичних.

Використання підручника дає можливість створити у студентів відповідну базу знань для вільного користування англійською мовою у професійних, наукових та інших цілях; забезпечити володіння чотирма видами мовленнєвої діяльності на відповідному рівні на базі синтаксичних, семантичних та фонетичних правил і закономірностей англійської мови, та соціокультурних знань і вмінь здійснювати іншомовну комунікацію; застосовувати культурологічну інформацію у професійній діяльності та використовувати власний досвід оволодіння іншомовним мовленням у майбутній викладацькій діяльності; удосконалювати мовленнєву підготовку шляхом використання автентичних англомовних матеріалів; демонструвати впевненість і позитивну мотивацію у користуванні англійською мовою; усвідомлювати важливість і необхідність оволодіння всіма чотирма видами мовленнєвої діяльності; усвідомлювати зміст і основні завдання курсу практики усного та писемного мовлення.

CONTENT

EXERCISES

1. ARTICLE	8
2. PREPOSITION	9
3. NOUN	10
4. NUMERALS	12
5. PRONOUN.....	12
6. ADJECTIVE	15
7. THE VERB TO HAVE (HAVE GOT).....	16
8. THE VERB TO BE	17
9. INFINITIVE	19
10. MODAL VERBS	21
11. PRESENT CONTINUOUS	22
12. PRESENT INDEFINITE (SIMPLE)....	23
13. PAST INDEFINITE (SIMPLE)	24
14. FUTURE INDEFINITE (SIMPLE)	26
15. PAST CONTINUOUS	28
16. FUTURE CONTINUOUS	30
17. PRESENT PERFECT	31
18. PAST PERFECT	33
19. FUTURE PERFECT	36
20. PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS	38
21. PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS	39
22. FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS	41
23. IMPERATIVE MOOD	42
24. PASSIVE VOICE	42
25. SEQUENCE OF TENSES	44
26. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.....	45
27. GERUND	47
28. PARTICIPLE (I, II)	47

TESTS

TEST 1	49
TEST 2	51
TEST 3	56
TEST 4	58
TEST 5	60
TEST 6	62
TEST 7	64

GRAMMAR REFERENCES

ARTICLE	66
PREPOSITION	68

NOUN	69
POSSESSIVE CASE.....	71
NUMERAL	72
PRONOUN.....	73
COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES	78
THE VERB TO HAVE (HAVE GOT)	79
THE VERB TO BE	80
INFINITIVE	81
MODAL VERBS	83
PRESENT CONTINUOUS.....	84
PRESENT INDEFINITE (SIMPLE)	85
PAST INDEFINITE (SIMPLE)	86
FUTURE INDEFINITE (SIMPLE)	87
FUTURE IN THE PAST INDEFINITE (SIMPLE)	89
PAST CONTINUOUS	89
FUTURE CONTINUOUS	90
FUTURE IN THE PAST CONTINUOUS	90
PRESENT PERFECT	90
PAST PERFECT	91
FUTURE PERFECT	92
PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS	93
PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS	93
FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS	94
IMPERATIVE MOOD	94
PASSIVE VOICE	95
SEQUENCE OF TENSES	96
CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.....	97
GERUND	98
PARTICIPLE (I, II).....	99
IRREGULAR VERBS LIST	101
ENGLISH TENSES ACTIVE	106

TOPICS

1. About myself.....	108
2. About my friend	111
3. About your flat	113
4. My working day... ..	115
5. My day off	118
6. My English lesson	120
7. My English teacher.....	122
8. My native city (Odessa)	123
9. The capital of Ukraine (Kyiv)	126
10. Ukraine	127

11. The Ukrainian character in comparison with the other nations (holidays, traditions).....	129
12. Qualities of a real teacher of foreign languages	131
13. Learning languages. English is a language that conquered the world	133
14. Seasons. Planning holidays.....	135
15. Travelling... ..	140
16. Travelling abroad.....	142
17. The Geographical position of the United Kingdom of Great Britain & Northern Ireland... ..	144
18. Climate and nature of Great Britain	146
19. London - The Capital of Great Britain	148
20. Traditions and holidays of the United Kingdom	152
21. Education in the United Kingdom	154
22. Education in the USA	157
23. The peculiarities of the Ukrainian educational system	159
24. The South Ukrainian National Pedagogical University named after K. D. Ushynsky... ..	160
25. Modern kinds of sport and games	163
26. The relationships between children and parents.....	164
27. Punishing children.....	167
28. Shopping... ..	168
29. Theatre.....	170
30. Cinema	173
31. The national symbols of Ukraine	175
Texts on specializations	177

ARTICLE

1. Put in a/an, the or ...

A. 1. There are three rooms and . . . kitchen in her flat. . . . kitchen is small.
2. My tie is made of . . .silk. 3. I have . . . English book. It is . . . good book. 4.
There is . . . park in front of our school. 5. My father is . . . teacher, my mother is . .
. doctor. 6. They are . . . drivers. 7. Give me . . . ink. It is on . . . table. 8. My brother
has . . . red tie. 9. . . . old woman at the window is my mother. She is housewife.

B.1. I am . . . student. 2. I study at . . . University. 3. I study . . . English. 4.
I live in . . . good flat. 5. My friend lives in . . . large house. 6. . . . rooms are large
and comfortable. 7. He has many things in his . . . room. . . . things are good. 8. There
is . . . book-shelf in . . . room. . . . books on . . . book-shelf are good. 9. There
is . . . large shelf on . . . wall. 10. My friend studies at . . . University. University
is large.

2. Fill in the correct article.

1. This is my ... table. On ... table I have ... book, two ... pencils, ... pen and ...
paper. 2. This is ... bag. ... bag is brown. It is my sister's ... bag. And this is my ...
bag. It is ... yellow. 3. She has two ... daughters and one ... son. Her ... son is pupil.
4. My ... brother's ... friend has no ... dog. 5. This ... pencil is broken. Give me that
... pencil, please. 6. She has ... ball. ... ball is ... big. 7. I got ... letter from my friend
yesterday. ... letter was interesting. 8. We have ... breakfast in ... kitchen. We eat...
porridge and ... eggs. We drink ... tea. 9. "Is this your ... friend?" – "No, it isn't my
... friend, it is my sister". 10. I can see three ... children. ... children are playing in
...yard. 11. We have seen what...Earth looks like from...Moon. 12. What's your
address? - I live inMontague Road, number 13. What'sweather like today? –
... weather is fine. 14. ... sun is yellow.. ... sky is grey today. 15. My ... mother is at
... home. She is reading ... interestingbook.

3. Put in the word using the necessary article.

Bicycle, capital, cigarette, play, difficult language, kitchen, nice day, next train,
roof, small, hotel.

1. Rome is _____ of Italy.
2. When we were in London, we stayed at _____.
3. Can you ride _____ ?
4. What's that man doing on _____ of that house? Is he repairing something?
5. We went to the theatre last night but _____ wasn't very good.
6. Do you think English is _____ for people to learn?
7. "Would you like _____?" "No, thanks. I don't smoke".
8. "Where is Jack?" "He's in _____. He's cooking something."
9. Excuse me, what time is _____ to London?
10. It's _____ today. Let's go out.

4. Insert the articles where necessary.

1. Did you have ... good time in the country? – Oh yes weather was fine. We were out of ... doors from ... morning till ... night. We played ... football,.....volleyball and ... other games. We came ... home late at ... night and went to.... bed at once. 2. Look at ... clock! It is ... quarter past ten. Go to ... bed at once. 3. ... sun rises in ... east and sets in ... west. 4. We spent last summer in ... Ukraine, in ... little village on ... bank of ... big river with ... very warm water. There was ... wood on.....other side of ... river. We often went to ... wood and gathered ... lot of mushrooms.

PREPOSITION

1. Read and translate.

Де?

On the table – на столі

On the floor, on the desk, on the bank of the river, on the desk, on the windowsill, on the lake.

Куди?

On the table – на стіл

On the floor, on the desk, on the bank of the river, on the desk, on the windowsill, on the lake.

Де?

In the room – у кімнаті

In the kitchen, in the box, in the cup, in the flat, in the cupboard, in the sea, in the forest.

Куди?

Into the kitchen, into the box, into the cup, into the flat, into the cupboard, into the sea, into the forest.

Де?

At the theatre, at the cinema, at the museum, at the shop, at the university, at the hotel.

Куди?

To the theatre, to the cinema, to the museum, to the shop, to the university, to the hotel.

2. Put in on, in, into, to, with or by.

1. Where is the book? - - It is ... the table. 2. Where is the tea? – It is ... the cup. 3. Put the plates ... the table. 4. Put the book ... the bag. 5. There is a beautiful picture ... the wall. 6. He went ... the room. 7. I like to sit ... the sofa ... my room. 8. Mother is cooking dinner ... the kitchen. 9. She went ... the room and sat down ... the sofa. 10. There are many people ... the park today. 11. Don't stand ...by the window. 12. We are going ... the cinema. 13. He was walking ... his mother.14. He put his hand ... his pocket, took out a letter and dropped it ... the mail-box. 15. .We did not want to stay ... town on such a hot day. 16. We went ... the garden and sat down ... a bench. 17. The teacher hung a picture ... the blackboard. 18. There are many people ... the park today. 19. There is a girl standing ... the bridge. Why is she crying? - She has dropped her doll ... the water. 20. There were two maps ... the wall and some

flowers ... the window-sills. 21. Where is your little sister? - - She is ... bed. 22. There were some books and pens ... the teacher's table.

3. Translate from Ukrainian into English.

О четвертій годині, доречі, на автобусі, в середу, у відпустці, пішки, помилково, на кораблі, в суботу, на сніданок, по телевізору, протягом заняття, між автомобілями, після обіду, про природу, за будівлею, над столом, під ліжком, з моєю сестрою, після роботи, в коробку, в коробці, в театрі, біля стіни, через 25 хвилин, із кінотеатра, після вечірки, підійти до дошки, вийти в кімнату, за комп'ютером, під сумкою, під час, ненавмисно, помилково.

4. Put in the necessary preposition if it is necessary.

1. Jane is arriving ... January. 2. It snows here every year ... December. We always go outside and play in the snow ... Christmas day. 3. Michael is leaving ... Friday noon. 4. Frankie started working for her law firm ... 1995. 5. Franklin began working on the project ... yesterday. 6. Normally, New Year's Eve, it's tradition to kiss the one you love ... midnight. 7. Don't be ridiculous; there were no telephones ... the seventeenth century! The telephone was invented. 8. The plane leaves tomorrow morning ... 8:00 AM. 9. The hills here are covered with wild flowers ... spring. 10. We met at the restaurant ... 6:30.

NOUN

1. Write the countable and uncountable nouns into two different columns:

Wall, pen, air, picture, water, match, tea, time, hour, bread, river, friend, cigarette, cheese, teacher, glass (стакан), glass (скло), paper (папір), paper (газета), music, coffee, armchair, gold, ship, milk, shop, idea, ice, furniture, butter, wood, tree, word, ink, money, coin, university, hero, assistant, darkness, meat, instrument.

2. Give the plural of the following nouns.

Toe, city, hero, piano, calf, cliff, proof, chief, stitch, bath, belief, life, shelf, berry, valley, roof, pen, window, wall, week, clock, ship, library, watch, dress, country, glass, day, party, play, bus, leaf, life, colony, fox, half, mass, eye, language, place, key, thief, ray, bush, mouth, journey;

3. Make the nouns in bold plural.

1. A copy of the contract was sent to London.
2. The last leaf fell from the tree.
3. The woman standing by the window is our secretary.
4. This shoe is too large for my foot.
5. The mouse was caught.
6. What is the child's name?
7. The roof of the house was covered with snow.
8. A potato is a vegetable and a cherry is a fruit.

4. Make the nouns in bold singular.

1. These factories produce furniture.
2. The wives of the sailors came to the shore.
3. I have hurt my feet and hands.
4. If we are lucky, we shall see oxen, sheep, cows and geese.
5. Do your teeth still ache?
6. These are my friends' studies.
7. These ladies are those gentlemen's wives.
8. The children are sitting on the benches.

5. Give the corresponding feminine nouns.

A lion, a tiger, an actor, a poet, a man, an uncle, a husband, a brother, a grandfather, a son, a master, a baron, a count, a shepherd, a host.

6. Give the corresponding masculine nouns.

A lady, a girl, a niece, Mrs. Smith, a widow, a stewardess, a French woman, a cow, a queen, a princess, a duchess, a hen, a mother.

7. Paraphrase the following word combinations using possessive case.

1. The room of my friend. 2. The questions of my son. 3. The wife of my brother. 4. The table of our teacher. 5. The poems of Pushkin. 6. The voice of this girl. 7. The new club of the workers. 8. The letter of Pete. 9. The car of my parents. 10. The life of this woman. 11. The handbags of these women. 12. The flat of my sister. 13. The children of my brother. 14. The room of the boys. 15. The name of this girl. 16. The work of these students.

8. Rewrite these sentences using 's, s', or just an apostrophe (')

The books for children. These are children's books.

This bag belongs to my friend.

He described the career of the actress.

This is the signature of Mr Brown.

The mistakes which students make.

This is a club for women.

It's a school for girls.

The room is for the guests.

This umbrella belongs to James.

I liked the dinner we had yesterday at the cafe belonging to Mike.

9. Translate from Ukrainian into English in two ways, using both possessive and common cases.

Лист своєї сестри, ковзани мого брата, зошити ваших учнів, речі наших дітей, пташине гніздо, сім'я мого друга, батько мого друга, матір мого друга,

сумка Тома, словники студентів, книги нашого учителя, твори цього хлопчика, голос моєї сестри, сміх і крики дітей, мокрі чоботи хлопчиків, бабусине крісло.

10. Use possessive case.

1. I like _____ (the camera / Ann).
2. What is _____ (the name / this city)?
3. When is _____ (the birthday / your sister)?
4. Do you like _____ (the colour / this dress)?
5. What is _____ (the address / Jill)?
6. Write your name at _____ (the top / the page)?
7. Are these _____ (the children) pens?
8. Are you _____ (all) daughter?
9. Here's _____ (my parents) address.
10. What's _____ (the Wilsons) number?
11. Carol and Nadine are sisters. That's _____ (Carol and Nadine) father.

NUMERALS

1. Read the numerals

- 1) 2, 12, 20; 3, 13, 30; 4, 14, 40; 5, 15, 50;
6, 16, 60; 7, 17, 70; 8, 18, 80; 9, 19, 90.
- 2) 134; 245; 306; 403; 6,075; 8,279; 1, 005; 2,625; 5,247; 893

2. Write down the numerals:

- 1, 11, 21; 2, 12, 20; 3, 13, 30; 4, 14, 40; 5, 15, 50; 6, 16, 60; 8, 18, 80; 9, 19, 90; 100, 103, 300, 425; 1.000; 1.015

3. Write the following cardinal numerals with letters and make the corresponding ordinal numerals.

- 1; 2; 3; 4; 5; 11; 12; 14; 15; 21; 25; 28; 30; 52; 67; 74; 83; 99; 100.

4. Translate into English

12 січня 1999г., 22 березня 1934 г., 1 червня 2010 г., 31 березня 1950г.,
26 травня 1900 г., 16 липня 2005 г., 5 грудня 2003г.,

PRONOUN

1. Complete the sentences using possessive pronouns (my, your, his, her, our, their).

1. I left ... car in the garage.
2. Mary hung ... coat on the peg.
3. Jack had ... hair cut.
4. Neil and David ate ... supper.
5. I hope you enjoy ... holiday.
6. We'll invite you to ... house.

7. You must make up ... own mind.
8. The children had to cook ... own supper.
9. Bill borrowed Jenny's car ... own car was being repaired.
10. I'll bring ... own sheets and towels.
11. Every dog had ... own special basket to sleep in.
12. You should do ... own washing up.

2. Put some, any or no.

1. He does his homework without ... difficulty.
2. This year all the apples are red, we are going out this morning to pick ...
3. I'd like ... water, please.
4. There weren't ... tomatoes left.
5. I won't go with you. I have ... free time.
6. There aren't ... students at the moment.
7. Sorry, I have ... matches.
8. Do you have ... money?
9. The box was empty. There was ... apples in it.
10. Pour me ... milk, please.

3. Put something, anything, nothing/ somebody, anybody, nobody

1. Your pupils didn't know ... about the competition.
2. Was there ... in the club?
3. Did she put ... into her bag?
4. There was ... in our garage last night.
5. Has John seen ... else there?
6. Elisabeth has no English magazines. She needs to read ... in English.
7. John didn't tell them ... about his parents and their problems.
8. They saw that Robert took ... bag and ran away.
9. Jane never eats ... in the evening.
10. ... is going to visit your wife in the afternoon.
11. Sarah never goes by train ...
12. Jack told us he was going to swim ... in the evening.

4. Choose the correct form of the pronouns in brackets.

1. It may be (our, ours) dictionaries.
 2. He has not read a line of (your, yours).
- How can he criticise (your, yours) poems?
3. His composition is much more interesting than (your, yours) or (my, mine).
 4. (Their, theirs) knowledge of the subject is not much superior to (our, ours).
 5. I'm afraid they will take (her, hers) advice not (your, yours).
 6. All (our, ours) clothes were extremely dirty, and (my, mine) especially so.
 7. Will you help me to sort out the things? I cannot tell which are (your, yours) and which are (my, mine).
 8. This is (your, yours) notebook, but where is (my, mine)?

5. Insert a reflexive pronoun where necessary.

1. He shaves every other day. 2. Go and wash_____. 3. She washed _____quickly and went to prepare breakfast. 4. He likes his wife to dress_____well. 5. Behave_____good! 6. You can't behave _____badly 7. The child fell and hurt _____badly. 8. The book was ever so interesting that I could not tear_____from it. 9. Be careful with the knife, you may cut _____. 10. He thinks too much of_____. 11. I am sure they will succeed in the aim they've put before_____. 12. We found in a hotel. 13. She looked in the mirror and could not recognize .

6. Translate into English.

Ці речення, ті речення, ця сумка, ці троянди, ті квіти, цей текст, той текст, ці слова, ці дерева, ця адреса, та адреса, ці сірники, ті сірники, ці дахи, ті дахи, ці слова, ті краватки, ті кімнати, ці підручники, ті підручники.

7. Translate into English.

Багато зошитів, багато молока, багато води, багато днів, багато газет, багато крейди, багато снігу, багато років, багато картин, багато музики, багато хлопчиків, багато дівчаток, багато чаю, багат лимонів, багато м'яса, багато кімнат, багато вчителів, багато роботи, багато повітря, багато птахів, багато автомобілів.

8. Translate into English.

Мало будинків, мало чаю, мало чашок, мало яблук, мало вікон, мало паперу, мало кави, мало статей, мало радощів, мало супу, мало дерев, мало трави, мало дітей, мало іграшок, мало світла, мало парт, мало ковбаси, мало соку, мало книг, мало квітів, мало солі, мало друзів, мало палаців.

9. Put little or few.

1. I have ... time, so I can't go with you. 2. He has ... English books. 3. There is ... ink in my pen. Have you got any ink? 4. There are ... bears in the zoo. 5. Tom Canty was the son of poor parents and had very ... clothes. 6. There is tool ... soup in my plate. Give me some more, please. 7. The children returned from the wood very sad because they had found very ... mushrooms. 8. There was too ... light in the room, and I could not read. There are very ... people who don't know that the earth is round.

10. Put much or many.

1. Please don't put ... pepper on the meat. 2. There were ... plates on the table. 3. I never eat I... bread with soup. 4. Why did you eat so ... ice-cream? 5. She wrote us ... letters from the country. 6. ... of these students don't like to look up words in the dictionary. 7. ... in this work was too difficult for me. 8. ... of their answers were excellent. 9. ... of their conversation was about the institute. 10. There are ... new pictures in this room. 11. There are ... teachers at our school, and ... of them are women. 12. ... of these plays are quite ... new. 13. Thanks awfully for the books you

sent me yesterday. - - Don't mention it, it wasn't ... bother. 14.....of her advice was useful. 15. He had.... pairs of socks.

11. Choose the correct form.

1. There (is, are) a large table in my room.
2. There (is, are) three windows in my classroom.
3. There (is, are) a table and four chairs in my living-room.
4. There (is, are) a blackboard, four desks and five chairs in our class-room.
5. There (is, are) a text-book and two exercise-books on the table.
6. There (is, are) two shops and a cinema in my street.

ADJECTIVE

1. Make Comparative and Superlative degrees.

Big, heavy, bad, famous, good, expensive, hot, little, fat, beautiful, far, easy, old, white, thin, thick, nice, warm, cold, merry, dry, clean, dirty, wide, deep, brave, difficult, interesting, late.

2. Translate into English.

Старий, старше, найстаріший, найстарший, мій старший брат, мій старий друг, далі, найдавший, найдовший, коротше, щасливий, щасливіший, найщасливіший, найкращий, найчорніший, довше, гірше, краще, тепліше, її кращий друг, її молодший син, його старший син.

3. Open the brackets and make comparative or superlative degrees.

1. Which is (large): the United States or Canada? 2. What is the name of the (big) port in the United States? 3. Moscow is the (large) city in Russia. 4. The London underground is the (old) in the world. 5. There is a (great) number of cars and buses in the streets of Moscow than in any other city of Russia. 6. St. Petersburg is one of the (beautiful) cities in the world. 7. The rivers in America are much (big) than those in England. 8. The island of Great Britain is (small) than Greenland. 9. What is the name of the (high) mountain in Asia? 10. The English Channel is (wide) than the straits of Gibraltar. 11. Russia is a very (large) country.

4. Put in as ... as or so ... as.

1. Mike is ... tall ... Pete. 2. Kate is not ... nice ... Ann. 3. My room is ... light ... this one. 4. This book is not ... thin ... that one. 5. Sergei is... old ... Michael. 6. She is ... young ... Tom's brother. 7. This woman is ... good ... that one. 8. Nick's English is not ... good ... his friend's. 9. I am not ... tall ... Pete. 10. This woman is ... young ... that one. 12. I am ... thin ... you. 13. Kate is ... lazy ... her brother. 14. This child is not ... small ... that one.

5. Translate the words in brackets.

This is (найцікавіша книга) I have ever read on this subject.

Swimming is (вкрай популярний) summer sport.
Shakespeare is (найвидатніший) English poet and playwright of all the ages.
Coal is (вкрай важливий) natural resource.
He is (доволі розумний) man.

6. Complete these sentences. Use the comparative of the words in brackets (+ than).

Example: My toothache is more painful than it was yesterday, (painful)
You look you were last year. Have you lost weight? (thin)
You won't believe it but he is his sister, (talkative)
I usually buy vegetables at the market. It's much . (cheap)
The problem is not so complicated. It's you think, (simple)
She looks like her mother but I think she is even . (beautiful)
Health and happiness are money, (important)
I prefer this armchair. It is . (comfortable)
I like the countryside. It's and living in a town, (healthy/peaceful)

TEST1

THE VERB TO HAVE (have got)

1. Translate the sentences.

The students had five lectures last week. 2. Anna has holidays in summer.
3. My grandmother had a lot of apples last autumn. 4. Ann and Mary have the same hobbies. 5. We have a lot of snow in winter. 6. Our library has many books and journals. 7. Elsa had a Ford last year. 8. John had two exams yesterday.

2. Write questions:

Example: (you/a bicycle?) Have you got a bicycle? What kind of bicycle have you got?

1. Carol / many friends?
2. Mr and Mrs Lewis/any children?
3. how much money/you?
4. what kind of car/John?
5. Alice/a camera?
6. he /a lot of friends?
7. she /a headache in the evening?
8. they \ free time?
9. we \ a lot of books?
10. my cousin \ good marks at school ?

3. Put in have got ('ve got), has got ('s got), haven't got or hasn't got.

-They like flowers. They've got a lot of roses in their garden.

-Jane hasn't got a car. She goes everywhere by bicycle.

1. Everybody likes Tom. He ___ a lot of friends.

2. Mr and Mrs Eastwood___two children, a boy and a girl.
3. This insect___six legs.
4. I can't open the door. I___a key.
5. Quick! Hurry! We___much time.
6. "What's wrong?" - "I___something in my eye".
7. Ben doesn't read much. He___many books.
8. It's a nice town. It___a very nice shopping centre.
9. Mother is going to the dentist. She___a toothache.
10. "Where's my newspaper?" - "I don't know. I___it."
11. Julia wants to go on holiday but she___any money.
12. I'm not going to work today. I___a bad cold.

4. Put the sentences into negative and interrogative form.

1. Anna has a new coat.
2. We will have holidays soon.
3. Nick has got a scooter.
4. They had an old garden.
5. Mary had red roses in her garden.
6. The hunter has got a dog.
7. The child will have new toys.
8. You have two apple-trees in the garden.

5. Translate into English.

У них є три собаки і три кішки.
 У неї великі зелені очі.
 У мого брата блакитне авто.
 Скільки у вас землі?
 У нас не було авто в минулому році.
 В мене вчора боліла голова.
 Коли ви п'єте чай?
 Ми добре провели час вчора.
 Вона добре провела відпустку на півдні.
 У вас є книги з історії Англії?

THE VERB TO BE

1. Put the verb to be in Present Simple.

1. I ... a pupil. 2. My father ... not a teacher, he ... a scientist. 3. ... your aunt a doctor? Yes, she 4. ... they at home? No, they ... not at home, they ... at work. 5. My brother ... a worker. He ... at work. 6. ... you an engineer? Yes, I....7 your sister a typist? No, she ... not a typist, she ... a student. 8. ... your brother at school? Yes, he 9. ... your sister at school? No, she ... not at school. 10. My ... sister at home. 11. ... this your watch? Yes, it 12. She ... an actress. 13. Thismy bag. 14. My uncle ... an office-worker. 15. He ... at work. 16. Helena painter. She has some fine pictures. They ... on the walls. She has much paper. It.... on the shelf. The

shelf ... brown. It ... on the wall. Helen has a brother. He ... a student. He has a family. His family ... not in Kiev, it ... in Odessa.

2. Write positive and negative short answers (Yes, I am. / No, he isn't, etc.)

Are you married? - No. I'm not. Is she tall? - Yes, she is.

Are your hands warm?	Is it cold today?	Are you thirsty?
Are you an engineer?	Is your father tall?	Are you hungry?
Is it sunny?	Is your niece a student?	Is your family friendly?

3. Put in am/is/are/was/were. Some sentences are present and some are past.

Last year their son ___26, so he ___27 now.

Today the weather nice, but yesterday it cold.

I cold. Can I have something hot to drink?

I hungry last night, so I had something to eat.

Where you at 10 o'clock last Sunday morning?

Don't buy those shoes. They too expensive.

Why you so tired yesterday?

We must go now. It very late.

This time last year I in England.

We tired when we arrived home, so we went to bed.

Anton Chekhov died in 1904. He a famous Russian writer.

"Where the dogs?" - "I don't know. They in the garden ten minutes ago."

4. Translate into English:

1. Я студент. 2. Він учень. 3. Вона вчитель. 4. Ми студенти. 5. Ви робочі.
6. Ти студент. 7. Вони учні. 8. Я вдома. 9. Він в школі. 10. Вона в кіно?
11. Ми в парку. 12. Вони в театрі? 13. Вона молода? 14. Він старий. 15. Вона не стара. 16. Вони сильні. 17. Вона хвора. 18. Ви хворі? 19. Він хворий? 20. Я не хворий. 21. Я був хворий вчора. 22. Вона не була хвора. 23. Ми були в кіно. 24. Вони не були в кіно. 25. Вони не в школі. 26. Вони вдома. 27. Ви були в парку вчора? 28. Він був в школі вчора? 29. Він був робочим. 30. Вона була вчителькою.

5. Put in to be in Present, Past or Future Simple.

1, My father ... a teacher. 2. He ... a pupil twenty years ago. 3. I ... a doctor when I grow up. 4. My sister ... not ... at home tomorrow. 5. She ... at school tomorrow. 6. ... you ... at home tomorrow? 7. ... your father at work yesterday? 8. My sister ... ill last week. 9. She ... not ill now. 10. Yesterday we ... at the theatre. 11. Where ... your mother now? – She ... in the kitchen. 12. Where ... you yesterday? – I ... at the cinema. 13. When I come home tomorrow, all my family ... at home. 14. ... your little sister in bed now? – Yes, she ... 15. ... you ... at school tomorrow? – No, I ...

6. Give short answers (positive and negative):

Was your mother at the ministry yesterday?
 Were you at holiday last month?
 Was the text difficult?
 Were our engineers at the exhibition last week?
 Were your parents at the theatre last night?
 Was it interesting at the party?
 Were you late for lessons yesterday?
 Was I impolite yesterday?

7. Перекладіть на англійську мову, використовуючи дієслово to be в Present, Past або Future Simple.

1. Моя сестра зараз в школі. 2. Мій брат був вчора в кіно. 3. Мій брат буде завтра вдома. 4. Вона буде вдома завтра? 5. Він був вчора в парку? 6. Вона зараз у дворі? 7. Де твоє авто? 8. Де ви були вчора? 9. Де він буде завтра? 10. Мої книги були на столі. Де вони зараз? 11. Моя мама вчора не була на роботі. Вона була вдома. 12. Мій друг не в парку. Він в університеті. 13. Завтра о третій годині ми будемо на роботі. 14. Ми не були на півдні минулого літа. Ми були в Лондоні. 15. Завтра мої батьки будуть в селі. 16. Коли твоя сестра буде вдома? 17. Ти будеш лікарем? – Ні, я буду вчителем. 18. Моя сестра була студенткою в минулому році, а зараз вона вчитель.

INFINITIVE

Інфінітив з часткою “to” вживається після слів і словосполучень:

	to agree	погоджуватися
	to appear	з'являтися
	to decide	вирішувати
	to expect	очікувати
	to hope	сподіватися
	to plan	планувати
	to promise	обіцяти
	to refuse	відмовлятися
	can (cannot) afford	не мати змоги допомогти собі

Інфінітив без частки “to” употребляется после слов и словосочетаний:

	let	дозволяти
	make	робити
	see	бачити
	hear	чути
	feel	відчувати

	had better	(Ви) б краце
	would rather	(я) надав би перевагу

1. Translate into Russian.

1. I called every morning to see if there was any news.
2. We stopped to have a smoke.
3. He came here to speak to me, not to you.
4. The car was waiting at the door to take them to the station.
5. To explain the problem he drew diagrams all over the blackboard.
6. The steamship "Minsk" was chartered to carry a cargo of timber from St. Petersburg to Hull.
7. Under clause 35 the charterers were to supply the steamer with icebreaker assistance to enable her to enter or to leave the port of loading.
8. To meet the increased demand for industrial goods, a great number of new shops have been opened in the towns.
9. The first lot is ready for shipment, but to economize on freight we have decided to ship it together with the second lot.
10. Please send us your instructions at once to enable us to ship the machines by the 20th of May.

2. Put "to" before the infinitive where it is necessary.

1. My son asked me ... let him ... go to the club.
2. You must make him ... practice an hour a day.
3. She was made ... repeat the song.
4. He is not sure that it can ... be done, but he is willing ... try.
5. Let me ... help you with your work.
6. She asked me ... read the letter carefully and ... write an answer.
7. You ought ... take care of your health.
8. I looked for the book everywhere but could not ... find it.
9. He was seen ... leave the house.
10. We had ... put on our overcoats because it was cold.

MODAL VERBS

Present	Past	Future
can	could	will be able to
must	had to	will have to
have to	had to	will have to
need to	needed to	will need to

may	might	HeT
-----	-------	-----

1. Put in «can, may, must».

1. "... you help me with my English?" "Yes, I" 2. We ... all have a good rest. 3. "... I sit down?" "Yes, you" 4. I ... study English hard because I want to read technical literature. 5. You ... speak English at the lesson. 6. "... she go home now?" "No, she ... because she has much work to do."

2. Put in necessary modal verb.

1. Tell your son that he ... not drink cold water.
2. ... you help me? – I am afraid not.
3. You ... take this book, I don't need it now.
4. I am free and I ... read you aloud a little.
5. My sister ... not translate this article. It is very difficult.
6. I ... see her tonight.
7. My father ... not finish his work today. He is tired.
8. She ... be leaving now.

3. Make up the sentences following the examples.

Example: Copy the letter now/to do it later.

–Must I copy the letter now?

–No, you needn't. You can do it later.

1. translate the letters today/to do it next week.
2. send the cable right away/to do it in half an hour.
3. do on business this week/to do it in half an hour.
4. type the letter right away/the matter can wait.
5. telephone the chief right away/to do it later.

4. There is a mistake in each sentence. Correct the mistakes.

1. Actors may learn a lot of dialogues by heart. 2. Your glass is empty. Must I refill it? 3. Would I introduce Mr. Brown to you? 4. My sister can to play a few musical instruments. 5. Some years ago I didn't can speak English.

TEST 2

PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE

AFFIRMATIVE

NEGATIVE

INTERROGATIVE

I	am	reading	I	am not reading	Am I reading?
---	----	---------	---	----------------	---------------

He is	reading	He is not reading	Is he reading?
She is	reading	She is not reading	Is she reading?
It is	reading	it is not reading	Is it reading?
We are	reading	We are not reading	Are we reading?
You are	reading	You are not reading	Are you reading?
They are	reading	They are not reading	Are they reading?

1. Put the verbs in Present Continuous Tense

1. What your sister (to do) now? – She (to wash) the dishes. 2. He (to work) in the centre of the city at the moment. 3. We (not to dance) now. 4. They (to play) in the room now? 5. He (to sleep) now? 6. They (to read) many books. 7. The children (to eat) soup now. 8. Look! Kate (to dance) now. 9. His father (not to watch) TV at the moment. He (to sleep) because he (to be) tired. 10. Your friend (to do) his homework now?

2. Answer the questions using the words in brackets.

Example: Are you drawing? (write a story)- No. I'm not. I'm writing a story.
 Is he writing a letter? (watch television)
 Are you reading Byron's poems? (learn them by heart)
 Is Dad smoking in his study? (read a newspaper)
 Are they listening to the radio? (talk with a friend)
 Are you hurrying to work? (go home)
 Is Joan playing the piano? (listen to a concert)
 Are you working at your essay? (write a film script)
 Is she washing up? (cook)

3. Translate into English.

1. На кого ви зараз дивитеся? - Я дивлюся на цю молоду леді. 2. Що пише Ваш друг? - Він пише нову статтю. 3. Про що ви розповідаєте своїм друзям? - Я розповідаю їм про свою відпустку. 4. Ви зараз пишете диктант? - Ні, ми виконуємо вправу. 5. Ці студенти виконують вправу чи переписують текст? 6. Кого зустрічають ці студенти? – Вони зустрічають іноземних студентів. 7. Куди ви йдете? Я йду на фотовиставку. 8. Що ви обговорюєте? – Ми обговорюємо новий фільм. 9. Де він чекає на неї? – Я думаю, біля університету. 10. Хто читає цю лекцію? – Професор Оксфордського університету читає цю лекцію.

THE PRESENT INDEFINITE (SIMPLE) TENSE

AFFIRMATIVE			NEGATIVE			INTERROGATIVE		
1	read	1	do	not	read	Do	1	read?
He	reads	He	does	not	read	Does	he	read?
She	reads	She	does	not	read	Does	she	read?
It	reads	It	does	not	read	Does	it	read?

We	read	We do	not	read	Do	we	read?
You	read	You do	not	read	Do	you	read?
They	read	They do	not	read	Do	they	read?

1. Write the following sentences in the 3rd person singular.

1.1 think I am ill. 2. They often visit their granny. 3. We live in Leeds. 4. You usually speak too quickly. 5. Do you like boiled potatoes? 6. Good animals always obey their masters. 7. The boys box in the gymnasium on Fridays. 8. His dogs always attack the neighbours. 9. Heavy trucks make a lot of noise.

2. Make up the sentences.

1. university, Ann, goes, to, nine, at
2. husband, work, and, at, I, my, plant, a
3. not, go, to the Institute, Sundays, student, on, do
4. Nick, at, does, University, study, the (?)
5. our, receive, the best, scholarships, students, University, of

3. Write the following sentences a) in the negative, b) in the interrogative

1. I (to do) morning exercises.
2. He (to work) at a factory.
3. She (to sleep) after dinner.
4. We (to work) part-time.
5. They (to drink) tea every day.
6. Mike (to be) a student.
7. Helen (to have) a car.
8. You (to be) a good friend.
9. You (to be) good friends.
10. It (to be) difficult to remember everything.
11. The flowers (to look) fresh.
12. She usually (to walk) in the morning.
13. He (to have) coffee in the evening.
14. She (to remember) them well.
15. He (to play) chess very well.

4. Put the verb in brackets into the Present Indefinite.

1. In England the traffic (keep) to the left but on the Continent it (keep) to the right. 2. They often (come) to see me in my town house 3. Jane (to be) fond of sports. She (to do) her morning exercises every day. 4. For breakfast she (to have) two eggs, a sandwich and a cup of tea. 5. After breakfast she (to go) to school. 6. My father (like) a lot of milk in his tea and a few lumps of sugar. 7. We usually (spend) our holidays in Spain. 8. My English friends (live) in a nice house that (stand) on a hill that (overlook) lake Windermere, which (be) in the Lake District. 9. What this sentence (mean)? 10.1 (live) in Kiev, which (be) my native town. 11. My

brother (sing) in Italian opera. 12. My sister (have) a good appetite and she always (eat) heartily.

5. Translate the sentences into English using the Present Indefinite Tense.

1. В Одесі багато студентів. 2. Вони навчаються в інститутах і університетах. 3. Студенти університета дуже багато займаються (to work hard). 4. По неділям ми не працюємо, а діти не ходять в школу. 5. Він завжди навідує нас, коли буває в Києві. 6. "Скільки часу ви витрачаєте на дорогу додому?" - Як правило, я витрачаю на дорогу додому біля тридцяти хвилин. 7. Він тепер рідко подорожує. 8. Ви часто ходите в кіно? 9. Вона ніколи не запізнюється. Вона завжди приходить вчасно. 10. "Ви відчуваєте що-небудь?" - Ні, я нічого не відчуваю. 11. Його батько - інженер. Він будує мости.

THE PAST INDEFINITE (SIMPLE) TENSE

AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	INTERROGATIVE
I worked/wrote	I did not work/write	Did I work/write?
	I didn't work/write	

1. Write the verbs below under the correct heading.

Laugh, live, smile, land, cry, pin, hurry, play, hop, try, race, travel, swim, crash,
verb + ed verb + d double the last letter + ed change y to i and add ed

2. Write the verbs in the past.

On Monday I get up at seven. I go to the bathroom and wash my hands and face and clean my teeth. Then I dress, go to the kitchen and cook breakfast for my family. At half past seven my son gets up and has breakfast. I have breakfast with my son. My daughter eats a sandwich and drinks a cup of tea. I don't drink tea. I drink coffee. After breakfast my daughter leaves home for school. I don't leave home with my daughter. On Monday I don't work in the morning. I work in the afternoon. In the evening I am at home. My husband and my daughter are at home, too. We rest in the evening. My daughter watches TV, my husband reads newspapers and I do some work about the house. At about eleven o'clock I go to bed.

3. Complete the sentences with the simple past tense of the verbs.

1. The boys (whisper) secrets to each other.
2. Uncle Ben (hurry) to catch his bus.
3. We (return) our books to the library.
4. She (kiss) the frog and it (change) into a prince.
5. Someone (tap) me on the shoulder.
6. The baby (cry) when we took her toy away.
7. John (pin) the badge onto his jacket.

8. Two doctors (rush) into the room.
9. This is the house that we (live) in when I was younger.
10. Grandad (lower) himself into the chair.

4. Put one of these verbs in each sentence:

hurt, teach, spend, sell, throw, fall, catch, buy, cost.

Example: I was thirsty, so I bought apple juice in the shop.

My father me how to drive when I was 17.

James down the stairs and his leg.

We needed some money so we our summer house.

They a lot of money yesterday. They a dishwasher which 5000
hrivnas.

The boy the ball to the dog and the dog it.

5. Present or Past Simple.

1. I (to study) English every day.
2. You (to come) to my place yesterday?
3. He (to live) in Dubai.
4. How long it (to take) you to get to the City Mall?
5. What you (to study) every Friday?
6. We (to have) dinner with my family yesterday.
7. His computer (to be) ready yesterday.
8. My friend (to like) running in the park every morning.
9. Their family (to invite) everybody to the party last week.
10. Jesse always (to come) to work early.

6. Underline the correct past tense verb in each sentence below.

1. I (losed / lost) my watch in the park.
2. David (hurt / hurted) his knee when he (falled / fell).
3. I kicked the ball hard and it (breaked / broke) a window.
4. My new shoes (cost / costed) a lot of money.
5. I (getted / got) this book from the library.
6. We had a garage where we (keeped / kept) our car.
7. Ali (shew / showed) me the cut on his knee.
8. The glass (falled / fell) off the table and (breaked / broke).
9. We (selled / sold) our old car and (buyed / bought) a new one.
10. The bell (ringed / rang) and we all (goed / went) into school.
11. The dog (catched / caught) the ball in its mouth.
12. The man (kneeled / knelt) down to talk to the little boy.
13. I (meeted / met) my friend in the park.
14. Our cat (runned / ran) onto the road in front of a car.
15. Jane (writed / wrote) a letter to her best friend.

7. Translate into English

1. Вчора я зустрів Тома в театрі. 2. Коли ви її бачили в останній раз? – Минулого четверга. 3. Минулого року ми не вивчали англійську мову. Ми вивчали німецьку мову. 4. О котрій годині ви закінчили працювати вчора? – Після обіду. У нас було багато роботи. 5. Погода була сонячна, і ми з друзями пішли в парк. 6. Вони почали цей дослід на минулому тижні. 7. Ми повернулись додому о 8 годині вечора. 8. Ми вирішили послати цей лист три дні тому. 9. Кому ви віддали ці журнали? – Я віддав їх своєму однокурснику. 10. Хто сказав тобі правду? – Я дізнався її від твого брата.

TEST 3

FUTURE SIMPLE

AFFIRMATIVE:

I shall play	We shall play
You will play	You will play
He / she / it will play	They will play

INTERROGATIVE:

Shall I play?	Shall we play?
Will you play?	Will you play?
Will he / she / it play?	Will they play?

NEGATIVE:

I shall not play	We shall not play
You will not play	You will not play
He / she / it will not play	They will not play

1. Put the verbs in Future Simple.

1. My working day (to begin) at six o'clock.
2. I (to get) up, (to switch) on the TV and (to brush) my teeth.
3. It (to take) me about twenty minutes.
4. I (to have) breakfast at seven o'clock.
5. I (to leave) home at half past seven.
6. I (to take) a bus to the institute.
7. It usually (to take) me about fifteen minutes to get there.

8. Classes (to begin) at eight.
9. We usually (to have) four classes a day.
10. I (to have) lunch at about 2 o'clock.

2. Change the verb to be into Future Simple.

1. My friend is a doctor. (in 5 years)
2. They are in Moscow. (during winter vacation)
3. On Monday our first lesson is English, (next Monday)
4. She is working at the library now. (at 5 o'clock)
5. The book is translated into English, (soon).
6. The lesson is over. (in 5 minutes)

3. Answer the questions.

1. Where do you study?
2. Did you live in the hostel last year?
3. Will you take part in the conference?
4. When will you pass your English examinations?
5. Where does your friend study?
6. Where do your parents work?
7. Did you go to the theatre yesterday?
8. When did you finish school?
9. Do you often see your school-friend?
10. What is your future profession?

4. Open the brackets.

1. If you (to translate) this article into English, I shall use it in my report.
2. If she (to be) in Kiev now, she will meet you at the railway station.
3. If you (not to hurry), you will miss the train.
4. If it (to rain), we shan't go to the country.
5. When my friend (to come) to Odessa, we shall go to the Opera House.
6. What will you be doing when he (to come) to your place?
7. Don't forget to pay for your dinner before you (to leave) the canteen.
8. I shall be able to translate this article if you (to give) me a dictionary.
9. You will have to work hard at home if you (to miss) the lesson.
10. Where will you go when you (to come) to London.

5. Present, Past or Future Simple Tense.

1. We always (to consult) a dictionary when we (to translate) texts.
2. We (to take part) in a sport competition last Sunday.
3. My friend (to pass) entrance examinations to the University last month.
4. He (to study) at the English Department now.
5. He (to graduate) from the University in five years and will become a teacher.
6. The students (to come) to the lectures every day.
7. We (not to go) to the country this Sunday.

B. 1. When he (to graduate) from the University, he will become a good specialist.
 2. If you (to prepare) the report in time, you will take part in the conference.
 3. When I (to be) 18, I (to take part) in the elections.
 4. We (revise) the rules in some days.
 5. If you (to come) to the lecture, you will learn many interesting things

6. Put the verb in Future Simple or use «to be going to»

I've a headache. Wait. I ... (bring) you an aspirin.

Why have you taken the water? I ... (wash) a car.
 I want to paint my room. - What colour you (paint) it?
 What would you like to drink? I ... (have) a glass of milk.
 Oh. We need some money. - I ... (lend) a little.
 Did you send a letter? No, I forgot. I ... (do) it now.
 I have bought the manual of the phone and I (read) it.
 I (go) to this camp next month.
 I think you (be) a good mother.
 10. I ... (leave) you soon. My holidays are over.
 When we (make) the decision we ... (let) you know.
 Let's go inside. It (rain).
 Where are you going? - I (buy) some bread for dinner.
 What we .. (have) for dinner? I don't know... Ok. We (have) potatoes.
 My car is broken and I (repair) it.

7. Translate into English.

1. Наступного року мені буде 20 років.
2. Можливо, він прийде сьогодні.
3. Коли ви почнете вивчати іноземну мову?
4. Він думає, вам не сподобається новий балет.
5. Вона буде вдома о 6 годині? - Ні.
6. Я сподіваюся, ви добре напишете контрольну роботу.
7. У вас завтра буде багато роботи? - Так.
8. Екзамени почнуться 1 червня.
9. Фільм буде дуже цікавим.
10. Ми побачимося з ним наступного тижня.
11. Якщо ви зараз візьмете таксі, ви не запізнитесь на літак.
11. Коли ви захочете побачити мене, зателефонуйте.
12. Ви не будете знати англійську мову, поки не почнете старанно займатися.
13. Якщо вона вам зателефонує, попросіть її принести мені книгу.
14. Я побачу Тома завтра.
15. Як тільки я побачу Тома, я розкажу йому про це.

PAST CONTINUOUS (PROGRESSIVE) TENSE

1. Put the verb in Past Continuous.

1. They (to write) the test at this time yesterday.
2. He (to work) in the garden from two till five o'clock.
3. We (to watch) television the whole evening.
4. You (to play) football at six o'clock?
5. You (to drink) tea at seven o'clock?
6. He (to draw) from three till four o'clock?
7. Who (to listen) to the radio at this time?
8. It (to rain) the whole day yesterday?
9. They (to skate) at three o'clock?
10. She (not to help) mother about the house from two till six.

2. Make up the sentences using the Past Continuous Tense.

- 1) We/to plant/the trees/all morning/yesterday.
- 2) Frank/ to work/in the garage/from 2 till 5 o'clock last Saturday.

- 3) Children/to train/in the gym/at 7 o'clock yesterday.
- 4) It/ to snow/heavily/all the day/last Monday.
- 5) At 11 o'clock yesterday morning1/Mr Brooks and his son/to wash/the car.
- 6) Nelly/to talk/on the phone/at 3 o'clock yesterday.
- 7) Some girls/to play/tennis/at this time/yesterday.
- 8) You/to have/ lunch/from 1 till 2 o'clock last Wednesday.
- 9) Some workers/to load/the boxes/into the lorry/at that time,
- 10) Alice/to clean/ the flat/a 11 the afternoon/yesterday.

3. Put the verb in brackets in Past Simple or Past Continuous

1. She (to cook) yesterday.
3. She (to cook) from two till four yesterday.
4. I (not to read) at five o'clock.
5. I (not to read) when you came in.
6. What he (to do) when I came?
7. What he (to do) the whole day yesterday?
8. Pete (to water) flowers in the garden yesterday.
9. Pete (to water) flowers in the garden at five o'clock yesterday.
10. What Pete (to do) when I came to see him?

4. Choose Past Simple or Past Continuous.

1. When I (to come) home, my little sister (to sleep).
2. When Nick (to come) home, his brother (to play) with his toys.
3. When mother (to come) home, I (to do) my homework.
4. When father (to come) home, Pete (to sleep).
5. When mother (to come) home, the children (to play) on the carpet.
6. When I (to get) up, my mother and father (to drink) tea.
7. When I (to come) to my friend's place, he (to watch) TV.
8. When I (to see) my friends, they (to play) football.
9. When I (to open) the door, the cat (to sit) on the table.
10. When Kate (to open) the door, the children (to dance) round the fir-tree.
11. When Tom (to cross) the street, he (to fall).
12. When I (to go) to school, I (to meet) my friend.
13. When we (to go) to the cinema, we (to meet) grandmother.
14. When grandmother (to go) home, she (to see) many children in the yard.
15. When Henry (to walk) about in the forest, he (to find) a bear cub.
16. When we (to walk) about in the forest, we (to see) a hare.
17. When I (to wash) the floor, I (to find) my old toy under the sofa.
18. When granny (to read) a book on the sofa, she (to fall) asleep.
19. When I (to play) in the yard, I suddenly (to see) my old friend.
20. When Nick (to run) about in the yard, he (to fall).

5. Present Continuous, Present Simple, Past Simple или Future Simple.

1. We (to go) on a tramp last Sunday.
2. Your brother (to go) to the country with us next Sunday?
3. Granny (not to cook) dinner now.
4. We (to cook) our meals on a fire last summer.
5. My sister (to wash) the dishes every morning.
6. When you (to go) to school?
7. What you (to prepare) for breakfast tomorrow?
8. You (to invite) your cousin to stay with you next summer?
9. How you (to help) your sister last summer?
10. I (to send) a letter to my friend tomorrow.
11. Every morning on the

way to school I (to meet) my friends. 12. My friend (to go) to the library every Wednesday. 13. He (not to go) to the country yesterday. 14. Why you (to go) to the shop yesterday? 15. We (to grow) tomatoes next summer. 16. What you (to do) now? 17.

6. Present, Past, Future Simple; Present, Past Continuous.

1. Look at these girls: they (to skate) very well. 2. You (to skate) last Saturday? – Yes, we (to skate) the whole day last Saturday. We (to skate) again next Sunday. 3. My brother can skate very well. He (to skate) every Sunday. 4. What you (to do) now? – I (to wash) the dishes. 5. What you (to do) at three o'clock yesterday? – I (to have) dinner. 6. You (to have) dinner now? 7. Where your brother (to work)? – He (to work) at an institute. 8. Your grandmother (to sleep) when you (to come) home yesterday? 9. What your brother (to do) tomorrow? 10. I (not to go) to the shop yesterday. I (to go) to the shop tomorrow. 11. Where Kate (to go) when you (to meet) her yesterday? 12. Every day the boss (to enter) the office at nine o'clock. 13. Yesterday the boss (to enter) the office at half past nine. 14. When the secretary (to come) tomorrow? 15. At six o'clock yesterday we (to listen) to a very interesting lecture. 16. When I (to enter) the office, the secretary (to type) some letters. 17. My friend (to ring) me up at eight o'clock yesterday.

TEST 4

FUTURE CONTINUOUS (PROGRESSIVE) TENSE

1. Make sentences with WILL BE –ING

1. I'm playing tennis now. (this afternoon) - I'll be playing tennis this afternoon.
2. He is sleeping now. (at eleven o'clock)
3. We're working very hard. (at this time next month)
4. They are traveling. (all night)
5. She's doing the washing up. (in an hour)
6. He's still mending his car. (at dinner time)
7. I am driving a BMW. (in two years)
8. I'm studying English. (from 8 to 10)
9. I'm having an interview now. (at 2 o'clock this afternoon)
10. We're listening to pop music. (at this time tomorrow)

2. Open the brackets. Use Future Continuous Tense.

This time next year I (not/work) for this company any more.

I (sit) at home. You can come at six tomorrow.

At nine o'clock the day after tomorrow, she (study) at the university.

We won't be at home this evening as we (look) after our neighbor's baby.

He (have) breakfast at ten o'clock, so, please. Do not disturb him.

Jacob can give the papers to him as he (see) him this evening.

I will meet you tomorrow. I (wait) for you at eleven at the station.

He can help you in the library tomorrow as he (prepare) his work anyway.

My parents (paint) the house all the weekend.

They can't visit you on Tuesday because they (play) volley-ball then.

3. Translate into English.

Завтра ти будеш працювати весь день? 2. Марк не буде завтра ввечері брати авто. 3. Ти завтра будеш їхати в Київ весь день? 3. В цей час завтра Джейкоб буде дивитись фільм. 4. Завтра весь день я буду прибирати свою кімнату. 5. С'юзен завтра вранці не буде читати книгу, оскільки вона буде зайнята. 6. В цей час в наступного року я буду студентом. 7. Ганна буде грати з тобою в теніс завтра вдень? 8. Мої батьки не будуть завтра весь день готуватися до своєї подорожі.

PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

AFFIRMATIVE		INTERROGATIVE		NEGATIVE
I/We/They/You	have done	Have I/we/they/you	done?	I/we/they/you have not done.
He/She/It	has done	Has he/she/it	done?	He/she/it has not done.

1. Write a suitable sentence using the PRESENT PERFECT TENSE :

- Ann's hair was dirty. Now it's clean. (wash).....Ann has washed her hair.....
- Tom was 80 kg. Now he's 70. (lose weight)
- Bill played football yesterday. Now he can't walk; his leg is in plaster. (break).....
- My sister is looking for her pen. (lose)
- Mary is on holiday in France. (go)
- Mr. Hill was in Canada last week. He's back in London now. (be)
- Look! Mrs. Smith has got a lot of packages. (buy)
- I can't eat anything now. (eat too much)
- Mrs. Jenkins is very tired. (clean / house)
- Tony needs a holiday. (work / hard / this year)

2. Put the words in the correct order.

- studied / Maths / have / I / and French.....
- my / done / I / yet / English / haven't.....
- my / you / looked / have / for / keys.....?
- been / since September / hot / has / it.....
- never / to my parents / have / I / lied.....
- a day off / had / never / has / Dad.....
- phoned / you / I've / three times.....
- seen / ever / a snake / you / have.....?

3. a) Follow the example and do the same using ALREADY:

Example: Bring the milk in, please.

- I have **ALREADY** brought it in.

1. You must find the tickets soon.
2. Turn the radio down, please.
3. Tidy your room.
4. Could you post the letters, please?
5. Why don't you see a doctor?

b) Follow the example and do the same using YET:

Example: She has been in the shop. (buy anything)

- She has been in the shop but she hasn't bought anything **YET**.

1. I've written to them three times. (not reply).....
2. I've asked you again and again. (not do it).....
3. I lent him \$10 last month. (not give it back).....
4. He lost his pen a week ago. (not find it).....
5. He borrowed my book last year. (not give it back).....

c) Fill in the blanks with **ALREADY or **YET**:**

1. He hasn't called us
2. They have sent the letter.
3. John has bought the tickets for the football match.
4. We have been to Mexico three times.
5. You haven't visited Tokyo
6. Has John bought a new car?
7. The plane has.....left.
8. Has she done it? - No, not
9. A: Haven't they arrived.....?
B: Oh, yes. They have arrived.
10. Hurry up! The class has.....started.

d) Follow the example and do the same using **JUST:**

Example: he / go out

- What has he **JUST** done?

- He has **JUST** gone out.

1. She / leave the room.....
2. they / watch the news.....
3. I / finish homework.....
4. he / put on the jacket.....
5. she / catch a fish.....

4. Put the verbs in the correct tense. Use the **SIMPLE PAST or the **PRESENT PERFECT**:**

1. Tim..... (finish) his work yet?
2. he(finish) it yesterday?
3. They.....(just / go) out.
4. They.....(go) out a minute ago.
5. Ann..... (study) yesterday afternoon?
6. you.....(send) the letters yet?

7. she(call) him a week ago?
8. They.....(not / see) the film yet.
9. The train (just / arrive).
10. you.....(ever / be) in a TV studio?
11. you and Tom(enjoy) the party last night?
12. you..... (not / finish) school last year?
13. I.....(lose) my dictionary. I can't find it anywhere.
14. His hair looks short. He (have) a haircut.
15. When (he / give up) smoking?

5. a) Ask questions with HOW LONG:

Example: I am married. - HOW LONG have you been married?

1. I know Bob.
2. Sue and Alan are married.
3. George is unemployed.
4. Those books are here.
5. Mary is at the airport.
6. My sister is ill.
7. She has got a bad cold.
8. Jan has long hair.
9. I have a yacht.
10. They are in the restaurant.

b) Rewrite the following sentences twice, using SINCE and FOR:

Example: I haven't seen you. (Christmas / 3 days)

a) I haven't seen you SINCE Christmas.

b) I haven't seen you FOR 3 days.

1. We've been here. (an hour / 4 o'clock)

a) b)

2. She hasn't spoken to me. (2 weeks / last week)

a) b)

3. They've lived in this street. (1970 / a long time)

a) b)

4. I haven't had time to do it. (last Monday / a few days)

a) b)

5. We haven't bought a new one. (ages / many years)

a) b)

6. Translate into English, using the Present Indefinite, the Present Continuous, the Past Indefinite or the Present Perfect Tense.

1. Я зазвичай снідаю о пів на восьму. 2. Коли ти бачив його востаннє? – Я бачив його минулого року. 3. Він вже збудував дім? - Ні. 4. Чому ви йдете так швидко? - Я йду швидко, тому що я боюсь запізнитись на поїзд. Я завжди ходжу швидко вранці. 5. Моя сестра ніколи не носить джинси. 6. Того вечора

я дивився телевізор. 7. Її племінник зазвичай приходить о восьмій годині вечора. 8. Кожного вечора я дивлюсь телевізор. 9. Коли я прийшов до Алекса минулої неділі, він читав нову книгу. Як тільки він закінчить читати її, він дасть мені цю книгу. 10. Я виграв цю партію в шахи (this game of chess). 11. Лекція ще не почалась, і студенти розмовляють. Зазвичай лекція починається о дев'ятій годині. 12. В школі він грав в баскетбол. 13. Я не грав в волейбол з 1983 року. 14. Автор ще молода людина. Він написав свою першу п'єсу в 1985 році. 15. Зараз 9 година вечора. Дитина вже заснула. Вчора ввечері він ліг спати значно раніше.

PAST PERFECT

AFFIRMATIVE		INTERROGATIVE		NEGATIVE
I/You/He/She/It/We/ They	had done	Had I/You/He/She/It/We/ They	done?	I/You/He/She/It/We/The y had not done.

1. Make up the sentences using the Past Perfect Tense.

- 1) The Presleys/to move/into a new flat/before last Easter.
- 2) Mike/to injure/his leg/so/he/couldn't skate/yesterday,
- 3) We/to write/the test/by 2 o'clock/yesterday.
- 4) Molly/to cook/breakfast/before/Harry/woke up.
- 5) By the time/we/reached/the seaport/our ferry/to leave.
- 6) Torn/apologized/because/he/to miss/the seminar.
- 7) Nora/looked/wonderful/after/she/to lose/a few kilos.
- 8) After/they/to put/a tent/they/made a fire.
- 9) Fred/to phone/me before/1 /left/home.
- 10) Every body/en joyed/the visit/to the museum/although/we/already/to be/there.

2. Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Perfect Tense.

- 1) Ella ... (to type) six letters by lunchtime.
- 2) After we ... (to buy) the tickets, we went to the platform.
- 3) When our delegation arrived at the university, the conference ... (already to begin).
- 4) There were no oranges left because Jane and Max ... (to eat) them all,
- 5) Mary ... (to give) me a warm blanket before I went to bed.
- 6) The lawyer ... (to prepare) all the documents by 4 o'clock yesterday.
- 7) The workers ... (to finish) the reconstruction of the bridge by the beginning of June.
- 8) I ... (to see) that man somewhere before I met him at the presentation.
- 9) By the time the police arrived, the burglars ... (to escape).
- 10) The rain started after we ... (to catch) a taxi.

3. Make the sentences negative and interrogative.

- 1) David had booked the room in the hotel before.
- 2) We had decorated the hall for the disco party by 4 o'clock.
- 3) They had agreed about the time of the meeting by Monday.
- 4) Sally had vacuumed the carpets before my arrival.
- 5) My parents had seen that performance before.
- 6) They had left for the airport before 5 o'clock.
- 7) You had fixed that camera by Tuesday.
- 8) Peter had paid the electricity bill before the weekend.
- 9) Wendy had shown me her fancy dress for the New Year party before.
- 10) It had stopped snowing by 9 o'clock.

4. Past Simple or Past Perfect

After Christian ... (spend) his summer in Spain, he ... (want) to learn Spanish.
Jane ... (phone) Mom at work before she ... (leave) for her journey.
Kate ... (turn on) the radio after she ... (wash) the dishes.
After the woman ... (come) home, she ... (feed) the dog.
When Christina ... (arrive), the film ... already ... begin).
He ... (play) guitar before he ... (sing) a song.
Eric ... (phone) his friend after he ... (make) breakfast.
After the children ... (go) to bed, she ... (watch) the video.
Children ... (ride) their bicycles before they ... (met) friends.
Pupil is very tired because he ... (study) too much.

5. Present, Past, Future Simple; Present, Past Continuous; Present, Past Perfect.

1. What you (to learn) for today? – I (to be) sorry, I (not to prepare) my lesson. I (to be) ill yesterday and (not to know) what to do. I (to prepare) my lesson tomorrow. – If you (not to prepare) your lesson tomorrow, you (to get) a bad mark.
2. What you (to do) at five o'clock yesterday? 3. Mike always (to do) his homework in the evening, but today he (to begin) doing it as soon as he comes from school, because his father (to promise) to take him to the theatre. 4. When Mary (to come) home, her brother (to read) the book which she (to bring) him two days before. 5. Autumn (to come). It (to be) November now. It (to get) colder, the days (to get) shorter. It often (to rain). Soon it (to be) very cold. 6. When I (to do) my homework yesterday, I quickly (to run) to the yard, because my friends (to wait) for me there. 7. We (to have) a good time last summer.

6. Translate into English:

1. Він побачив книгу там, де він її залишив. 2. Коли гості пішли, вона ввійшла в гостинну кімнату і вимкнула світло. 3. Дощ закінчився, але був ще легкий туман. 4. Я не знала, коли він пішов. 12. Коли експедиція повернулась, вони розказали, що вони бачили в Арктиці. 5. Вона закінчила читати книгу до

того часу, коли її сестра постукала в двері. 6. Коли всі пішли, вона підійшла до телефону й подзвонила.

FUTURE PERFECT

AFFIRMATIVE	INTERROGATIVE	NEGATIVE
I will (I'll)/shall ('ll) have done	Shall I have done?	I shall not/shan't / will not/won't have done
you will ('ll) have done	Will I have done?	you will not/won't have done
he will ('ll) have done	Will he have done?	he will not/won't have done
she will ('ll) have done	Will she have done?	she will not/won't have done
it will ('ll) have done	Will it have done?	it will not/won't have done
we will ('ll) / shall ('ll) have done	Shall we have done?	we will not/won't
they will (I'll) have done	Will they have done?	shall not/shan't have done they will not/won't have done

1. Make up the sentences using the Future Perfect Tense.

- 1) Jim/to write/the report/by next Thursday.
- 2) We/to clean/ the house/by the time of your arrival tomorrow.
- 3) I/to prepare/ all the documents/by the beginning of the meeting tomorrow.
- 4) The film/to finish/by 7 o'clock tomorrow.
- 5) They/to decorate/the square/by the beginning of the demonstration/next week.
- 6) The President/to finish/the press conference/by 3 o'clock tomorrow.
- 7) Diana/to design/your wedding dress/by next Friday.
- 8) I/to move/to a new house/by Christmas».
- 9) You/to start/your own business/by the time you are twenty-seven.
- 10) My father/to repair/his car/by Thursday.

2. Put the verbs in brackets into the Future Perfect Tense.

- 1) Mike ... (to prepare) all the calculations by the end of his working day tomorrow.
- 2) I... (to learn) some phrases in Japanese by the time the participants of the Japanese delegation arrive.
- 3) The chef ... (to cook) all the dishes by the time the banquet begins.

- 4) The secretary ... {to arrange} all the papers by the time the boss comes to the office tomorrow.
- 5) The ferry ... (to reach) the port by 4 o'clock tomorrow.
- 6) They ... (to deliver) our pizza by the beginning of the party tomorrow.
- 7) Jack and Monica ... (to send) all the invitations by next Tuesday.
- 8) I ... (to read) your report by tomorrow morning.
- 9) The workers ... (/o unload) the lorries by the end of their working day.
- 10) We ... (to analyse) the results of the experiment by next Friday.

3. Make the sentences negative and interrogative.

- 1) We will have played two games of cricket by 6 o'clock tomorrow.
- 2) They will have left the country by next Monday.
- 3) She will have returned from the walk by 8 o'clock tomorrow.
- 4) We will have done the shopping by 5 o'clock tomorrow.
- 5) Martin will have passed all the exams by next Wednesday.
- 6) You will have known the results of the test by tomorrow evening.
- 7) Angela will have written the essay by Tuesday.
- 8) The workers will have finished decorating our house by next month.
- 9) The performance will have finished by 8 o'clock.
- 10) The weather will have changed by tomorrow evening.

4. Translate into English

До цього часу завтра я вже завершу проект.
 До восьмої години діти вже заснуть.
 До завтрашнього ранку він відмінно виспитьсь.
 До наступного року вона отримає очікуване просування по службі.
 До наступної робори Пітер вже продасть свій автомобіль.
 В цей час завтра зранку вони почнуть працювати.
 Морган прибере весь будинок до часу вечері.
 Ми зтанцюємо декілька танців до піночі.
 До 2015 року я буду жити в Лондоні вже десять років.
 До цього часу на наступному тижні ми вже спіймаємо злодія.

PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE

AFFIRMATIVE		NEGATIVE		INTERROGATIVE	
I	have been reading	I	have not been reading	Have I	been reading?
He	has been reading	He	has not been reading	Has he	been reading?
She	has been reading	She	has not been reading	Has she	been reading?
It	has been reading	It	has not been reading	Has it	been reading?
We	have been reading	We	have not been reading	Have we	been reading?
You	have been reading	You	have not been reading	Have you	been reading?
They	have been reading	They	have not been reading	Have they	been reading?
I've	been reading	She	hasn't been reading		

She's been reading We haven't been reading

1. The verbs in bold are in the wrong sentences. Correct them.

1. My brother has been **saying** about getting a tattoo.
2. I have been **calling** English grammar since six o'clock this morning.
3. What terrible weather! It has been **talking** for six days!
4. Your face is bright red! Have you been **raining**?
5. I know she's been **running** things about me behind my back.
6. Where have you been? We've been **studying** you on your mobile.

2. Present Simple, Present Continuous або Present Perfect Continuous.

1. a) Вона читає.
b) Вона читає зранку.
2. a) Вони грають в волейбол.
b) Вони грають в волейбол з третьої години.
3. a) Ми вивчаємо англійську.
b) Ми вивчаємо англійську з 1998 року.
4. a) Мій тато працює в інституті.
b) Мій тато працює в інституті з 1995 року.
5. a) Моя бабуся готує обід.
b) Моя бабуся готує обід з другої години.
6. a) Моя сестра спить.
b) Моя сестра спить з п'ятої години.
7. a) Мама прибирає квартиру.
b) Мама прибирає квартиру з ранку.
8. a) Дідусь дивиться телевізор.
b) Дідусь дивиться телевізор з шостої години.
9. a) Мій дядя пише вірші.
b) Мій дядя пише вірші з дитинства.

3. Present Simple, Present Continuous, Present Perfect, Present Perfect Continuous.

1. He (to run) now. He (to run) for ten minutes without any rest. 2. What they (to do) now? – They (to work) in the reading-room. They (to work) there for already three hours. 3. Where he (to be) now? – He (to be) in the garden. He (to play) volleyball with his friends. They (to play) since breakfast time. 4. I (to live) in St. Petersburg. I (to live) in St. Petersburg since 1990. 5. She already (to do) her homework for two hours; but she (not yet to do) half of it. 6. I (to wait) for you since two o'clock. 7. What you (to do)? – I (to read). I (to read) for already two hours. I already (to read) sixty pages. 8. This man (to be) a writer. He (to write) books. He (to write) books since he was a young man. He already (to write) eight books. 9. What you (to do) here since morning? 10. Lena is a very good girl. She always (to help) her mother about the house. Today she (to help) her mother since morning. They already (to wash) the floor and (to dust) the furniture. Now they (to cook) dinner together. 11. This is the factory where my father (to work). He (to work) here for fifteen years. 12. You (to find) your note-book? – No! I still (to look) for it. I

already (to look) for it for two hours, but (not yet to find) it. 13. You (to play) with a ball for already three hours. Go home and do your homework. 14. Wake up! You (to sleep) for ten hours already. 15. I (to wait) for a letter from my cousin for a month already, but (not yet to receive) it.

PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE

AFFIRMATIVE		INTERROGATIVE		NEGATIVE
I/You/He/She/It/ We/They	had been doing	Had I/you/he/she/it/we/ they	been doing?	I/You/He/She/It/We/Th ey had not been doing.

1. Complete the sentences using the Past Perfect Continuous Tense.

Example: ... before we came from the supermarket. Liz/ to clean/the flat/for two hours.

– Liz had been cleaning the flat for two hours before we came from the supermarket.

- 1) ... before Tom came to the court. Helen/to play/tennis/for an hour and a half.
- 2) ... before he retired. Mr Black/to work /as a lawyer/for twenty-five years.
- 3) ... when the bus arrived. We/ to wait/for forty minutes.
- 4) Sheila looked tired because She/to sew/a dress/for her little daughter/all day.
- 5) Before Jack got to level four..... He/to play/the same game/for three hours.
- 6) Mike's neighbours were angry because He/to listen/to loud music /for four hours/yesterday evening.
- 7) Everybody was very hungry because They/to work/all day/without/a break for lunch.
- 8) ... when suddenly the car broke down. We/ to drive/for five hours.
- 9) ... before the plane landed in the airport late in the evening yesterday. They/to fly/for six hours.
- 10) ... since Easter, Alex and Den/to prepare/for the exams.

2. Make the sentences negative and interrogative.

- 1) Brian had been trying to find a better job for three weeks.
- 2) Little Johnny had been riding his new bike all day yesterday.
- 3) Robert and Frank had been fixing that computer for two hours yesterday.
- 4) Julia had been typing the report all the morning yesterday.
- 5) It had been raining all night last Tuesday.
- 6) The Smiths had been building their house for four years.
- 7) We had been skating for three hours yesterday.
- 8) You had been decorating the classroom for more than two hours last Saturday.
- 9) The twins had been fighting in the backyard when their mother saw them.

10) Molly had been speaking on the phone for an hour and a half yesterday evening.

3. Find mistakes and correct them.

- 1) Ann had been done the ironing for two hours yesterday.
- 2) We had tried to catch a taxi for twenty-five minutes last Sunday before we managed to stop one.
- 3) Margaret had been not surfing the Net all day yesterday.
- 4) Nigel had being trying to get in touch with you for a week.
- 5) Had been they waiting for a bus for half an hour last Wednesday?
- 6) How long Nelly had been speaking on the phone yesterday?
- 7) Had Sue been sunbathing all day yesterday? – No, she had.
- 8) They have been dancing for more than an hour yesterday before Helen got tired.
- 9) Who had played the piano in your room from 3 to 4 o'clock yesterday?
- 10) Why had been crying your baby all the morning yesterday?

4. Translate into English.

- а) Я чекала його вже 40 хвилин, коли він нарешті прийшов.
- б) Кли вони прийшли на вечірку, всі гості розішлись по будинкам.
- в) Оля не сказала мені, що минулого вівторка вона бачилась з моїм братом.
- г) Виявилось, вона працювала вже чотири години, перед тим як керівник помітив її.
- д) Майк вже навчився читати, коли йому виповнилося 5 років.
- е) Дівчина була вся мокрою. Напевно, вона плавала.
- ж) До кінця року народ обрав нового президента.

FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE

1. Make up the sentences using the Future Perfect Continuous Tense.

- 1) By the beginning of April/my father/to work as the General Manager of this corporation/for fifteen years.
- 2) By 8 o'clock/we/ to surf the Net/for five hours.
- 3) By the end of next month/we/ to live/in this city/for ten years.
- 4) By the end of this day /Dolly/ not to design/this fancy dress/for seven hours.
- 5) Ted/to work/ as an attorney/for twenty years/by the end of March?
- 6) Jack and Alison/to build/their house/for a year by Easter?
- 7) My parents/ to run/this cafe/for six years/by next September.
- 8) By 4 o'clock/ they/to play volleyball/for three hours.
- 9) By 3 o'clock/the students/to write/the test for two hours and a half.
- 10) By next Friday/ Henry /to train/for the competition/for ten months.

2. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

- 1) By the 25th of December she ... (to work) on this project for six months.
- 2) By Saturday, Fred ... (topaint) this picture for two weeks.
- 3) We ...(to study) marketing for a year by the end of the academic year.

- 4) By tomorrow morning Laura ... (to sleep) for twelve hours.
- 5) ... they ... (to work) together for ten years by the end of May? – Yes, they
- 6) ... Nick ... (to train) for four hours by 6 o'clock? – No, he
- 7) By 5 o'clock Jessica(to sit) at the dentist's for three hours.
- 8) By 12 o'clock the children(to swim) for two hours.
- 9) By the end of the day the workers ... (topaint) this house for nine hours.
- 10) By 6 o'clock in the evening we (to wait) for his message for five hours.

3. Present Simple, Present Continuous, Present Perfect, или Present Perfect Continuous.

1. Я вже три дні про це думаю. 2. Моя сестра п'є каву с молоком. А я завжди віддавав перевагу чорній каві. 3. Ми дуже раді вас бачити. Ми вас чекали цілий місяць. 4. Ви все ще читаете цю книгу? Скільки часу ви її вже читаете? 5. Моя сестра займається музикою вже п'ять років. 6. Я шукаю тебе весь вечір. Де ти був весь цей час? 7. Вони пишуть твір вже дві години. 8. Ми знаємо один одного вже чотири роки. 9. Я завжди хотів вивчати англійську мову. 10. Де Ніна? – Вона вже "дві години вдома. 11. Де діти? – Вони все ще грають на подвір'ї. 12. Мій брат вже три роки інженер. 13. Мій друг знає англійську з дитинства. 14. Я вже пів години спостерігаю за тобою. 15. Ваш брат ще хворий? – Ні, він вже поправився. Він вже три дні займається фізикою. Він хоче отримати відмінну оцінку на екзамені.

TEST 5

IMPERATIVE MOOD

1. Translate into English.

1. Підійди до дошки та запиши це речення англійською.
2. Не закривай вікно. Тут дуже жарко.
3. Ми дивимося телевізор. Не включай музику так голосно.
4. Відкрийте зошити і запишіть це правило.
5. Не будь таким строгим! Вона ще така дитина.

2. Make up the sentences.

the\ bottle\out\the\fridge\of\take
and\ come\ at\ mistakes\here\look\your
speak\so\don't\loudly
eat\ice-cream\don't\cold
and\look\repeat\words\at\after\me\the

PASSIVE VOICE

Таблиця всіх часів в Passive Voice

	Present	Past	Future	Future-in-the Past
Simple (Indefinite)	Letters are written every day.	The letter was written yesterday.	The letter will be written tomorrow.	(He said that) the letter would be written the next day.
Continuous (Progressive)	The letter is being written now.	The letter was being written at 5 yesterday.	-----	-----
Perfect	The letter has already been written.	The letter had been written by 5 o'clock yesterday.	The letter will have been written by 5 o'clock tomorrow.	(He said that) the letter would have been written by 5 the next day.
Perfect Continuous	-----	-----	-----	-----

1. Translate into Russian.

1. My letter was answered at once. 2. We were joined by a group of our students in the Crimea. 3. These events were followed by a wave of strikes. 4. The lecture was attended by many students. 5. The terms were agreed upon. 6. We hope that agreement will be arrived at. 7. He was listened to attentively. 8. This problem was not spoken about. 9. The doctor will be sent for at once. 10. This book was often referred to. 11. He was never heard of. 12. The terms were insisted upon. 13. They are taught French at school. 14. He was offered a new job. 15. We are paid twice a month.

2. Fill in the PASSIVE in the appropriate tense:

1. (TV / invent / Baird) TV was invented by Baird.
2. (Pyramids / build / Egyptians)
3. (milk / produce / cows)
4. (coffee / grow / in Brazil)
5. (chopsticks / use / in China)
6. (plants / water / every day)
7. (the thief / arrest / policeman / yesterday)
8. (the injured man / take to a hospital / now)
9. (the car / repair / tomorrow)
10. (the letter / send / last week)

3. Turn from ACTIVE into PASSIVE:

1. Someone is helping her with the housework.....
2. A pickpocket robbed me.....
3. The mail-order company sent Mrs. Green a parcel.....
- 4 A dog is chasing the child.....

5. My friend sent me an invitation.....
6. The farmer is building a new barn.....
7. The secretary has given Mrs. Jones some letters.....
- 8 The traffic warden had already given him a ticket for illegal parking.....
- 9 Someone had broken our door down.....
- 10 They chose him as the best actor of the year.....

4. Make questions in the PASSIVE from these cues:

Example: Where / our local newspaper / print - Where is our local newspaper printed?

1. How many / photos / store / in the photo library... ..?
2. photographs / develop / in the photo library
3. Where / messages / receive
4. the Daily Mirror / print / in Manchester.....?
5. this magazine / sell / in Spain.....?
6. Why / newspapers / send abroad.....?
7. When / the newspaper / print
8. How / newspapers / deliver

5. Present Simple Active или Present Simple Passive.

1. Він щодня розповідає нам щось цікаве.
2. Йому кожного дня розповідають щось цікаве.
3. Я часто відсилаю листи друзям.
4. Мене часто відправляють на південь.
5. Я завжди хвалю своїх друзів.
6. Мене завжди хвалять вдома.
7. Кожної суботи тато показує дідуся мої оцінки.
8. Кожну суботу татові показують мої оцінки.
9. Ми часто згадуємо вас.
10. Нас часто згадують в селі.
11. Мені дають сок кожного ранку.
12. Кожного ранку я даю кішці молоко.
13. Мене часто запрошують в кіно.
14. Моїй сестрі часто допомагають в школі.
15. Я іноді забуваю взяти щоденник.
16. Він пише багато листів.
17. Книги А. Кристі читають з цікавістю.
18. Собаки люблять кістки.
19. Собак люблять у багатьох сім'ях.
20. Коли в вашій родині п'ють чай?

THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES

Jim said (that)	It was interesting (now). it had been interesting (yesterday). it would be interesting (tomorrow).
-----------------	--

Direct Speech	Indirect Speech
this, these	that, those
now	then, at that moment
here	there
today	that day
tomorrow	the next day
the day after tomorrow	two days later in two days

yesterday	the day before
the day before yesterday	two days before
ago	before

1. Change the following sentences from DIRECT to INDIRECT SPEECH:

1. He said, "I will be here at noon." - He said that he would be there at noon.
2. Mary said, "The train will probably arrive on time.".....
3. He said, "I have to finish this report by five o'clock.".....
4. The doctor said, "Mr. Smith will improve quickly.".....
5. William said to me, "I am leaving in the morning.".....
6. The teacher said, "Everyone has to write a composition.".....
7. John said, "I saw that movie on Wednesday.".....
8. Helen said, "I have read that book.".....
9. Mary said to John, "I cannot go to the movie with you.".....
10. John said, "I have finished studying my lesson.".....

2. Open the brackets.

1. Her brother said he never (to see) that film before.
2. He came home and listened: his son (to play) the piano.
3. They didn't worry too much because they (to lock) the door.
4. I asked her when she (to give) me that book to read.
5. We wanted to know if they (to enjoy) the meal.
6. She supposed she (to like) the hotel.
7. I am afraid they (not to come) yet.
8. He wanted to know if the station (to be) far away.
9. Eric doesn't know who (to phone) him at five o'clock.
10. He admitted he (not to be) here for weeks.

3. Translate into English

1. Я думав, що вона хворіє.
2. Ми сподівались, що він прийде вчасно.
3. Я не знав, що його сестра вчить англійську мову.
4. Він впевнений, що закінчить роботу до вечора.
5. Вона сказала, що не хоче йти на прогулянку.
6. Ми хотіли знати, коли вона прийшла.
7. Мій друг каже, що вже прочитав цю статтю.
8. Я не знав, що він зайнятий і не може мені допомогти.
9. Ніхто не хотів вірити, що він сказав правду.
10. Вона сподівається, що я не буду працювати цілий день в неділю.
11. Ми побачили, що діти грають в футбол.
12. Він сказав, що його мама лікар.

TEST6

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

Тип	Приставне речення (умова)	Головне речення	Приклад	Переклад
1.Реальна умова, яка відноситься до теперішнього, майбутнього май минулого часу	Present Simple V/Vs	Future Simple shall/will + V	If I have money, I will buy a car. If the weather is fine, we will go for a walk.	Якщо я матиму гроші, я куплю машину. Якщо погода буде хороша, ми підемо гуляти.
2.Нереальна або маловірогідна умова, що відноситься до теперішнього або майбутнього часу.	Past Simple 2fV Дієслово to be буде мати форму множини	Future-in-the Past Simple would/should/ could/might + V	If the weather was fine, I went for a walk. If I were a princess, I would live in a palace. If I had money, I would buy a car.	Якщо погода була хорошою, ми ходили гуляти. Якщо б я була принцесою, я б жила в палаці. Якщо б я мав гроші, я б купив машину.
3.Нереальна умова, яка відноситься до минулого часу	Past Perfect had + 3fV	Future-in-the Past Perfect would/should/could/might + have + 3fV	If I had had money last year, I would have bought a car.	Якщо б я мав гроші минулого року, я б купив машину.

1. Open the brackets using the example.

E.g. If you (to be) free, I (to come) to see you.:

If you are free, I will come to see you.

If you were free, I would come to see you.

If you had been free, I would have come to see you.

1. If my friend (to come) to see me, I (to be) very glad. 2. If mother (to buy) a cake, we (to have) a very nice tea party. 3. If we (to receive) a telegram from him, we (not to worry). 4. If you(not to work) systematically, you (to fail) the examinations. 5. If you (to be) busy, I (to leave) you alone. 6. If I (to live) in Moscow, I (to visit) the Tretyakov Gallery every year. 7. If I (to get)a ticket, I (to go) to the Philharmonic. 8. If I (to live) near a wood, I (to gather) a lot of mushrooms. 9. If my father (to return) early, we (to watch) TV together. 10. If she (to know) English, she (to try) to enter the university.

2. Choose the right variant

1. If you spoke a foreign language, you_____a better job.

a) could get b) can get c) have got

2. If I _____ the time, I would go to the beach this weekend.
a) have had b) had c) was
3. If I had a lot of money, I _____ round the world.
a) would travel b) did travel c) can travel
4. If I _____ you, I would drive more carefully in the rain.
a) was b) have been c) were

3. Translate into English

1. Якщо ти закінчиш домашню роботу вчасно, ми підемо в кіно.
2. Матч відмінять, якщо піде дощ.
3. Ти запізнишся, якщо не поспішиш.
4. Я куплю машину, якщо мені підвищать зарплатню.
5. Якщо ти запізнишся, зателефонуй мені будь ласка.
6. Якщо я побачу її, я передам їй від тебе привіт.
7. Якщо б він не закінчив свій проект, він би взяв участь в конференції.
8. На вашому місці я б відвідав похилу даму.
9. Щоб ти зробив, якщо б ти виграв приз?
10. Я б погодилась, якщо б мене запросили мандрувати світом.

THE GERUND

FORM	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Простий герундій (Indefinite)	doing	being done
Досконалий герундій (Perfect)	having done	having been done

1. Choose the necessary verb and put it into the Gerund form

Say, watch, travel, be, come,

1. He prefers _____ by train to flying.
2. I am afraid of _____ late for the flight.
3. He suggests our _____ to see him.
4. _____ cartoons is always fun.
5. He left us without _____ a word

2. Use the words in brackets in the correct form of Gerund.

- 1) I can't imagine her (drive) a car.
- 2) He agreed (buy) his son a new CD player.
- 3) I enjoy (drive) at night.
- 4) The man asked me (open) the door.
- 5) I look forward to (see) you at the weekend.
- 6) Are you thinking of (visit) New York?

- 7) We decided (stay) in that beautiful town.
- 8) The teacher expected Michael (study) hard.
- 9) He doesn't mind (work) the night shift.
- 10) I learned (ride) a bike at the age of 6.

THE PARTICIPLE

Form	Active Voice	Passive Voice
Present (participle I)	standing - стояча	being built - строящийся
Past (participle II)	-	written- написаний
Perfect (participle I)	having packed – зпакувавши	having been examined – після того, як їх оглянули

1. Translate into Russian

1. The girl standing at the window is my sister.
2. Having been sent to the wrong address the letter didn't reach him.
3. He sat in the armchair thinking.
4. She came up to us breathing heavily.
5. The hall was full of laughing people.
6. The singing girl was about fourteen.
7. Having read the book I gave it to Pete.
8. The large building being built in our street is a new school – house
9. Having finished the experiment the students left the laboratory.
10. Being busy, he postponed his trip.

2. Put the verb into Indefinite or Perfect Participle I.

1. (To write) out all the words, I started to learn them.
2. (To buy) food, they left supermarket.
3. (to bark) dog doesn't bite.
4. She entered the room (to smile).
5. (To drink) coffee she was talking to her friend.
6. (To find) the keys, we were able to open the door.
7. (To make) the report, Tom left the room.
8. (To see) her he raised his hat.
9. My task (to finish), I went to bed.
10. While (to learn) the pronunciation of the words we learned their meaning.

3. Translate into Russian.

1. He doesn't like boiled milk.
2. I remember well his words said at the meeting.
3. We don't like the book bought last week.
4. The stolen things were returned to the owner.
5. Asked about this event, he replied nothing.

6. The explanation given was not complete.
7. When burnt, coal produces heat.
8. The results received were of great importance for the further work.
9. When reconstructed the theatre looked more beautiful than before.
10. She showed us a list of the newly published books.

4 Put the verb into Indefinite or Perfect Participle II.

1. The letter (to write) by him was very long.
2. We are interested in the goods (to produce) by this factory.
3. She didn't understand the word (to say) by him.
4. He didn't see the things (to keep) in her box.
5. I don't like the video (to buy) yesterday.
6. This is the house (to build) many years ago.
7. The question (to put) to the professor was important.
8. When (to offer) to work abroad, he refused.
9. The article on agriculture (to publish) in this magazine was written by Smith.
10. You can get the book (to recommend) by our teacher in the library.

5 Translate into English.

1. Не читай, лежучи в ліжку.
2. Залишена одна в кімнаті, маленька дівчинка заплакала.
3. Книга, яку зараз обговорюють – останній твір цього письменника.
4. Ось нові журнали, надіслані для вашого офісу.
5. Взявши бумагу і ручку, дитина почала писати.
6. Дівчинка, яка грає в садочку, моя сестра.
7. Будівля, яку будують в нашому районі, будуть новим басейном.
8. Хлопчик, якого зараз питають, мій двоюрідний брат.
9. Знаючи англійську, ти можеш спілкуватися з людьми різних країн.
10. Вона сиділа на лавці, читаючи книгу.

TEST 7

TEST 1

1. Put in the article

1. He is _____ vegetarian.
a) a b) the c) ____
2. He doesn't eat _____ meat.
a) a b) the c) ____
3. He eats _____ vegetables for _____ breakfast.
a) a b) the c) ____
4. My dog always sleeps at _____ door.
a) a b) the c) ____

5. Mary never sits in _____ sun.
a) a b) the c) ____
6. On _____ Sunday I get up late.
a) a b) the c) ____
7. My Granny doesn't listen to _____ news because it makes her nervous.
a) a b) the c) ____
8. What do you usually have for _____ lunch?
a) a b) the c) ____

9. Where is your ____ brother? –
He is at ____ home.
a) a b) the c) ____

10. We have a nice apartment in
the centre of ____ St. Petersburg.
a) a b) the c) ____

2. Put in the necessary preposition:

1. My elder brother is a doctor. He often comes home late (in, on, at) night.
2. Take the book (out of, from) the shelf.
3. I think you can get there (on, by, in) bus.
4. (At, in, on) Saturday I am (in, at) home (at, in) 3.
5. I live (in, at, on) Kiev not far (from, of) the Institute of Foreign Languages.
6. I'm a student. I'm (in, at) the University.
7. Would you like some coffee (to, by, for) breakfast?
8. Where are you? - He is (at, in) home now.
9. I'll call you (in, on, to) the evening
10. I'm usually very busy (on, in, at) Monday

3. Put in the necessary preposition if it is necessary.

1. Our studies begin (in, on, at) autumn.
2. Don't turn (on, off, in) the radio. Father is working.
3. I asked the librarian to show some books (for, to) me.
4. What do you usually do (at, in, on) your English lessons?
5. I live (in, at, on) Pushkin Street not far (from, of) the Institute of Foreign Languages.
6. John is waiting for me (in, at) the Institute.
7. He is (at, in) home now.

4. Choose one of the nouns.

1. She cannot live without discos
and...
a) partes
b) parties
c)) parteis
d) partys
2. I don't like fried ... This dish is
too fatty for me.
a) potatoes
b) potates
c) potateos
d) potatos
3. Children are not allowed to
play with...
a) match
b) matches
c) matchis

- d) matches
4. How many ... of bread do you
want me to buy?
a) loafes
b) loaves
c) loafes
d) loavs
5. I can't get home because I've
lost my ...
a) keys
b) keis
c) keies
d) keyes
6. People called the rescuers their
... after they saved two little boys from
a burning building.
a) heros

- b) hereos
c) heroos
d) heroes
7. Have you learned these spelling ...?
a) ruls
b) rules
c) rulies
d) rulys
8. ... look like dogs, but they are wild animals and cannot be tamed.
a) wolfes
b) wolves
c) wolvs
d) wolfs
9. Their ... are very kind and polite.
a) childs
b) childrens
c) childes
d) children
10. A typical English scenery includes green slopes with ... and a castle in the background.
a) sheep
b) sheepes
c) sheeps
d) sheepps
11. His ... ached so much that he had to go to the dentist immediately.

- a) tooths
b) teeth
c) teeths
d) toothes
12. Please, don't give me any ..., I have already decided what to do.
a) advicys
b) advices
c) advice
d) advics
13. Our granny doesn't see well, she always wears ...
a) spectacle
b) spectaclae
c) spectaclli
d) spectacles
14. I've earned much ... this month.
a) moneys
b) moneis
c) monies
d) money
15. We bought a lot of ... for our new flat.
a) furniture
b) furniturae
c) furnitures
d) furnitur

5. Choose the correct noun.

1. My aunt is my ... sister.
a. aunt's b. grandfather's c. mother's d. brother's
2. My cousin is my ... daughter.
a. aunt's b. mother's c. sister's d. brother's e. father's
3. My mother has a sister, her son is my ... nephew.
a. mother's b. aunt's c. sister's d. brother's
4. My ... father is my father-in-law.
a. uncle's b. husband's c. father's d. brother's
5. My father has a brother, his daughter is my ... niece.
a. father's b. uncle's c. brother's d. grandmother's
6. My ... parents are my grandparents.
a. niece's b. brother's c. sister's d. friend's e. mother's

7. My ... children are my grandchildren.
a. mother's b. daughter's c. father's

6. Translate from Russian into English.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. фотоапарат Тома - ... | 2. очі кішки - ... |
| a. Tom camera | a. the cat's eyes |
| b. Toms' camera | b. eyes of the cat |
| c. Tom's camera | c. the cats' eyes |
| d. The camera of Tom | d. cat eyes |
| 3. сьогоднішня газета - ... | 4. назва вулиці - ... |
| a. the newspaper of today | a. the street's name |
| b. today's newspaper | b. the street name |
| c. today newspaper | c. the name of the street's |
| d. todays' newspaper | d. the name of the street |
| 5. ім'я твоєї жінки - | 6. результат футбольного матчу - ... |
| a. your wife's name | a. the football's match result |
| b. the name of your wife | b. the football match's result |
| c. your's wife name | c. the football match result |
| d. your wife name | d. the result of the football match |

7. машина батьків Майка - ...

- a. Mike parents' car
b. car of Mike parents
c. Mike's parents' car
d. Mike's parent's car

9. садок наших сусідів - ...

- a. our neighbour's garden
b. our neighbours garden
c. our neighbours' garden
d. garden of our neighbours

8. день народження мого тата - ...

- a. birthday of my father
b. my father's birthday
c. my's father birthday
d. my father birthday

10. діти Дона і Мері - ...

- a. children of Don and Mary
b. Don's and Mary's children
c. Don and Mary's children
d. Don's and Mary children

7. Put in something, anything, nothing or everything.

1. Give me ... to read, please. -

With pleasure.

something

anything

nothing

everything

2. I don't know ... about your town. Tell me ... about it.

something

anything

nothing

everything

3. Please give me ... warm: it is cold here.

something,

anything,

nothing,

everything,

4. I understand ... now. Thank you for your explanation.

something

anything

nothing	everything
everything	6. Is there ... that you want to tell
5. There is ... white in the box.	me?
'What is it?	something
something	anything
anything	nothing
nothing	everything

8. Put in much, many, a lot of, little или few.

1. My brother is a young teacher. Every day he spends ... time preparing for his lessons. 2. I know very ... about this writer. It is the first book I am reading. 3. The pupils of our class ask ... questions at the lesson. They want to know everything. 4. You do not make ... mistakes in your spelling. Do you work hard at it? -- Oh, yes, I do, I work very 5. Does your sister read ...? -- Yes, she does. And your brother? -- Oh, he doesn't. He has so ... books, but he reads very 6. Have you ... work to do today? -- No, not very 7. Walk quicker, please. We have very ... time. 8. I am sorry to say, I have read very ... books by Walter Scott.

9. Put in there is (isn't) or there are (aren't)

- _____ a fly in my soup.
- _____ many parks in New York.
- _____ any tigers in Africa.
- _____ lots of hotels in big cities.
- _____ a bank near here?
- _____ life on Mars?
- _____ a telephone I can use?
- _____ a football game on TV.
- _____ 8 students in my class.
- _____ many people in my town.
- I don't know if we can sunbathe. _____ no empty place on the whole beach.
- We can't play volleyball. _____ any ball.
- _____ eggs? I want to make a pie.

10. Choose the correct form of the adjective

- I think I won't swim today, because the water is ... than usual.
 - colder
 - the coldest
 - coldest
 - colder
- His room was ... than we expected.
 - tidier
 - tidier
 - tidier
 - tidier
- This is ... building I have ever seen.
 - high
 - highest
 - the highest
 - higher

4. The path became ... when we passed the lake.

- b) narrower
- c) narrowest
- d) more narrower
- e) the narrower

5. This king was ... of all in his time.

- a) the noblest
- b) noblest
- c) nobler
- d) noblier

6. The roads in the countryside were ... than in the city, so we had to drive slower.

- a) wet
- b) wettest
- c) wetter
- d) weter

7. ... way to cook chicken is to roast it.

- a) the easiest
- b) the easiest
- c) the easiest
- d) the easist

TEST 2

1. Choose the correct variant

1. He ____ got a bicycle.

- have
- has

2. They ____ got a new car.

- have
- has

3. Mike ____ got a black suit.

- have
- has

4. ____ you got a sister?

- Have
- Has

5. ____ he got a toy car?

- Have
- Has

6. Have you got a doll? Yes, I ____.

have

has

7. Has he got a bird? No, he ____.

- haven't
- hasn't

8. Sasha ____ got a pet.

- haven't
- hasn't

9. We ____ got a cat.

- haven't
- hasn't

10. She ____ got a book.

- haven't
- hasn't

2. Fill in the gaps with the necessary form of the verb to have.

1. My best friend _____ a lot of spare time every day because he doesn't work.

2. _____ you _____ a minute? I'd like to talk to you.

3. I wonder where is Peter? He _____ some work to do.

4. Tomorrow morning I' ll _____ an appointment with my future boss.

5. What about going to the cinema?- I _____ enough money.

6. When you were at school, _____ the best friend?

7. Call the police or we'll _____ problems!

8. Next Monday I'll _____ an exam.
9. I decided to _____ a pet in my house because I'm very fond of them.
10. Tomorrow we' ll _____ a party. Will you join us?
11. I am going on a business trip to London.- _____ a ticket?
12. _____ some urgent business yesterday?
13. He _____ the desire to communicate with me. I don't know why?
14. She _____ a large flat in the center of the city.
15. I am really very tired after this working week. I need to _____ a rest.

3. Put in 1. are 2. is 3. am 4. have 5. has

1. My watch ... ten minutes fast.
2. These data ... not accurate.
3. No news ... good news.
4. How many pieces of furniture ... there in your room?
5. Mice ... also domestic animals.
6. Paper ... very expensive today.
7. The cat ... in the box.
8. Do you ... a cousin?
9. Mr. Brown ... a daughter.
10. Those cars ... red.
11. She ... a large family.
- 12 Nick ... my good friend.
- 13 ... she from England?

4. Write short negative form of the verb to be.

- 1) He _____ a policeman.
- 2) I _____ a student.
- 3) She _____ a secretary.
- 4) Your brother _____ twelve years old.
- 5) Karin and Mark _____ brother and sister.
- 6) It _____ a large truck.
- 7) I _____ going to the station.
- 8) My neighbours _____ Japanese.
- 9) Your girlfriend _____ very cute!
- 10) I _____ going to school today

5. Put in 1. was 2. were 3. will be

1. I ... tired last evening.
2. The weather ... nice yesterday.
3. They ...not here last Sunday.
4. You ... late yesterday.
5. Last year she ... 22.
6. When I ... a child, I ... afraid of dogs.
7. We ... tired after the journey but we ... not hungry.
8. The hotel ... very comfortable and it ... expensive.

9. Where ... you at 3 o'clock tomorrow?
- 10 ... the weather good when you ...on holiday?
11. Those shoes are nice. ... they expensive?
12. ... Marry... at work next week? Yes, she
13. Our hotel room ... very small and it ... not very clean.
14. Kate got married when she ... 24 years old.
15. George ... not at work next Monday because hein Kiev.

6. Put the questions to the sentences:

1. I have got a nice bag. 2. My sister is twenty. 3. He has got a modern flat. 4. The pupils are at their desks. 5. Nick was at the classes yesterday. 6. We'll be at home next week. 7. My fellow students are very friendly. 8. Their children were very shy.

7. Make up the sentences:

1. not, the, red, are, ties
2. this, is, big, a, bed (?)
3. Kiev, are, big, cities, and, Moscow
4. profession, is, future, teacher, a, my
5. were, where, yesterday, cousins, your?
6. is, a, in front of, there, our, garden, house
7. not, happy, to, I, will, them, see, be
8. got, sister, a, flat, his, has, modern
9. they, be, at, will, home, at, o'clock, 5?
10. the, got, a, our, have, relatives, new, in, house, village

8. Complete the following sentences using the most appropriate forms of the verbs.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Jack has got a headache. He ... | a) were to |
| sleep well recently. | b) had to |
| a) can't | c) could |
| b) couldn't have | 5. Where are my gloves? – I ... put |
| c) hasn't been able to | them on because it's cold today. |
| 2. I ... sleep for hours when I was a | a) can't |
| little girls. | b) have to |
| a) could | c) needn't |
| b) am able to | 6. You ... take an umbrella today. The |
| c) can | Sun is shining. |
| 3. Tom ... play tennis well but he ... | a) needn't |
| play a game yesterday because he was | b) mustn't |
| ill. | c) can't |
| a) couldn't, could | 7. I'm sorry, you didn't invite me to |
| b) can, was able | your birthday party. You ... invite me |
| c) can, couldn't | next time. |
| 4. I didn't want to be late for the | a) must |
| meeting. We ... meet at 5 sharp. | b) should |

c) need to

8. Well, it's 10 o'clock. I ... go now.

a) can

b) has to

c) must

9. You ... smoke so much.

a) would

b) can't

c) shouldn't

10. We have got plenty of time. We ... hurry.

a) must

b) needn't

c) should

TEST 3

1. Choose Present Simple or Present Continuous

1. On Mondays her children never ... in time. Therefore they are often late for classes.

a) wakes up

b) wake up

c) woke up

d) waking up

2. Every year our family ... for the Black Sea so that we may get a suntan and rest from daily routine.

a) heads

b) are heading

c) heading

d) heed

3. I ... on the phone with my friend at the moment! Don't disturb me!

a) am talking

b) talk

c) talked

d) are talking

4. We seldom ... our grandparents. We are too busy to do it.

a) visiting

b) are visiting

c) visit

d) visits

5. Are you ... anything special now? Do you mind coming with me to the concert?

a) do

b) doing

c) done

d) does

6. She ... in New York at the moment. Soon she will leave for Madrid.

a) are living

b) am living

c) live

d) is living

7. I will get a new car for you if you ... properly.

a) behaves

b) behave

c) are behaving

d) will behave

8. Sometimes he ... shopping himself but more often than not (почти всегда) he ... it with his parents.

a) go/do

b) is going/is doing

c) are going/are doing

d) goes/does

9. Presently she ... to the music. She have just bought a new disc.

a) is listening

b) are listening

c) listens

d) listen

10. They hardly ever (почти
ніколи) ... sweets, chocolate and
pastries. They think it to be bad for
their health.

- a) bought
- b) are buying
- c) buy
- d) buys

2. Choose the correct variant

1) Його тато працює в банкі.

- A) His dad works in a bank. B) His dad work in a bank.
- C) His dad is working in a bank. D) His dad working in a bank.

2) Де ти катся на ковзанах?

- A) Where you skate? B) Where do you skate?
- C) Where are you skating? D) Where you skating?

3) Що ти зараз читаєш?

- A) What do you read now? B) What you read now?
- C) What do you reading now? D) What are you reading now?

4) Нік завжди кормить тварин.

- A) Nick often feeds animals. B) Nick always feeds animals.
- C) Nick is always feeds animals. D) Nick is often feeding animals.

5) Ми не співаємо щодня.

- A) We are not singing every day. B) We do not sing every day.
- C) We not sing every day. D) We does not sing every day.

6) Ти щось пишеш?

- A) Do you write? B) Are you writing?
- C) You writing? D) You are writing?

7) Катя іноді катається на велосипеді?

- A) Does Kate sometimes rides a bike? B) Does Kate sometimes ride a bike?
- C) Does Kate always ride a bike? D) Do Kate always ride a bike?

3. Choose the correct variant of the verb in Past simple

He did/was tired

She knew/knowed the answer

I flied/flew to America

They showed/got tired

You heard/listened to him

She didn't/wasn't happy

Did/Was she happy?

She cryed/cried loudly

We were/did happy

He wasn't/weren't right

4. Open the brackets (Past simple)

1) She (bring)_____ some chocolates to the party.

2) I (hear)_____ a new song on the radio.

3) I (read)_____ three books last week.

- 4) They (speak)_____French to the waitress.
- 5) He (understand)_____during the class, but now he doesn't understand.
- 6) I (forget)_____to buy some milk.
- 7) She (have) _____ a baby in June.
- 8) You (lose) _____ your keys last week.
- 9) They (swim)_____500m.
- 10) I (give)_____my mother a CD for Christmas.
- 11) At the age of 23, she (become) _____ a doctor.
- 12) I (know)_____the answer yesterday.
- 13) He (tell)_____me that he lived in Toronto.
- 14) We (lend)_____John £200.
- 15) She (drink)_____too much coffee yesterday.
- 16) The children (sleep)_____in the car.
- 17) He (keep) _____ his promise.
- 18) I (choose) _____ steak for dinner.
- 19) The film (begin)_____late.
- 20) We (fly) _____ to Sydney.

TEST 4

1. Present Simple or Future Simple

1. If he still (to have) a cold and (not to feel) better, he (not to go) to the theatre.
2. He (to ring) me up when he (to return) home.
3. Where they (to go) if the weather (to be) fine?
4. If we (to be) tired, we (to stop) in a small village halfway to the town and (to have) a short rest and a meal there.
5. If she (not to work) properly, her boss (to fire) her.
6. I am sure he (to come) to say goodbye to us before he (to leave) for the USA.
7. Before he (to start) to London, he (to spend) a week or two at a health resort not far from here.
8. If you (to decide) about your diet, you (to eat) wedding cake tomorrow.
9. What he (to do) when he (to come) home in the evening?
10. If we (to put) in cameras, they (to stop) people stealing things.

2. Choose the correct variant

1. ... you finish any educational establishment next year? – No, I ... only finish school in 2 years.

- a) will/ will
- b) are/ won't
- c) will not/ do
- d) will/ am

2. My cousins ... on us in two-three months. Let's buy some gifts for them.

- a) will be calling
- b) will have called
- c) will call
- d) call

3. I ... give you to hold my puppy in your arms tomorrow because it's afraid of other people, especially strangers.

- a) not
- b) will

- c) won't
- d) will be

4. I hope he ... all the quarrels we have had for the last five years.

- a) will forget
- b) is forgetting
- c) won't forget
- d) will forgotten

5. Do you have a credit card? If no, we can give it to you for free – No, I ... cash.

- a) will be paying
- b) will have paid
- c) am paying
- d) will pay

6. We expect he ... soon, otherwise we'll be frozen. Then I'm sure we ... cold.

- a) will come/ will catch
- b) would be/would catch
- c) will come/would
- d) comes/ catch

7. Next week my parents ... from a long distance (дальнее) voyage.

- a) will be returned
- b) would return
- c) will return
- d) will have returned

8. In ten days he ... healthy as usual if he sticks to the doctor's rules and recommendations.

- a) won't
- b) will
- c) will have
- d) will be

9. In several days she ... a diploma and afterwards she ... job-hunting.

- a) Would get/would start
- b) will have got/ will start
- c) will get/will start
- d) will be getting/starts

10. What ... they ... the day after tomorrow if they have no money.

- a) will/bought
- b) will/be buying
- c) would/buy
- d) will/buy

3. Choose Past Simple or Past Continuous.

1. I _____ - I didn't hear you come in.

- a) was sleeping b) slept

2. I _____ to see her twice, but she wasn't home.

- a) was coming b) came

3. What _____? I was watching TV.

- a) did you do b) were you doing

4. Robin Hood was a character who _____ from the rich and gave to the poor.

- a) stole b) was stealing

5. Hey, did you talk to her? Yes, I _____ to her

- a) was talking b) talked

6. I _____ home very late last night.

- a) came b) was coming

7. How long _____ the flu?

- a) did you have b) were you having

8. _____ a good time in Brazil? Yes, I had a great time!

- a) Were you having b) Did you have

9. We _____ breakfast when she walked into the room.
a) had b) were having
10. Last month I decided to buy a new car, and today I finally
_____ it.
a) bought b) was buying

4. Correct the mistakes in the sentences

1. James met Sabine in 1998. He living in New York at the time.
2. I wanted to work in marketing. So I was joining a marketing company.
3. I were listening to the radio when you called.
4. I saw Jess a minute ago. She talked to Sam.
5. Why weren't you answer the phone when I called?

TEST 5

1. Open the brackets (choose Past Simple or Present Perfect).

1. We (to travel) around Europe last year.
2. My father knows so much because he (to travel) a lot.
3. I (to see) Pete today.
4. She (to see) this film last Sunday.
5. Alex (to meet) his friend two hours ago.
6. I just (to meet) our teacher.
7. The children already (to decide) what to do with the books.
8. Yesterday they (to decide) to help their grandmother.
9. Helen speaks French so well because she (to live) in France.
10. She (to live) there last year.
11. The rain (to stop) and the sun is shining in the sky again.
12. The rain (to stop) half an hour ago.
13. Mary (to buy) a new hat.
14. I (to buy) a pair of gloves yesterday.
15. The wind (to blow) off the man's hat, and he cannot catch it.

2. Present Past Continuous, Present Perfect, Past Simple,

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. He (play) a lot of football this year. | b. have you drunk |
| a. plays | c. have you been drinking |
| b. was playing | 5. What you (drink) when you came home? |
| c. has played | a. did you drink |
| 2. Tell me all about what (happen) at the meeting. I am all ears. | b. have you drunk |
| a. happened | c. were you drinking |
| b. has happened | 6. Your car is covered in mud. Where you (drive)? |
| c. has been happening | a. did you drive |
| 3. He (run) away from school three times when he was 14. | b. have you driven |
| a. ran | c. have you been driving |
| b. has run | 7. Our team just (lose) 8 games one after another. |
| c. has been running | a. lost |
| 4. How many cups of coffee you (drink) today? | b. has lost |
| a. did you drink | c. have been losing |

8. You (make) up your mind?
What you (decide) to do?
a. did you make/ have you decided
b. have you made/ have you decided
c. have you been making/did you decide

9. You (find) the place on the map yet?

a. Have you found
b. Did you find
c. Have you been finding
10. I (not/hear) anything from him yet.
a. didn't hear
b. haven't heard
c. haven't been hearing

3. Past Simple, Past Continuous or Past Perfect.

1. I (to sit) in the armchair and (to think) of my coming trip across the North Sea when the door suddenly (to open) and an old friend of mine whom I (not to see) for a very long time (to enter) the room. 2. She (to come) to see us just at the time when we (to have) dinner. It (to be) the first time I (to see) her. 3. I (to see) him just as he (to leave) the hotel. 4. I (not to see) him before we (to meet) at the concert. 5. He (to leave) the house before I (to have) time to ask him anything. 6. He (to tell) me he (to learn) it from the newspaper. 7. He (to enter) the room, (to take) something from the desk and (to go) out. 8. There (to be) two men in the room. One of them (to write) something while the other (to read) a newspaper. 9. He (not to tell) me that he (to receive) a telegram from her. 10. I (to ask) him if he (to know) where she (to live). I (to say) I (not to know) her address. 11. He (to ask) me if I (can) give him your address. 12. She (to say) that he (to give) her the wrong address. 13. I (to ask) him where he (to put) my letter. 14. He (to tell) us that they (to spend) all the money. 15. After spending several days in Paris he (to feel) lonely and (to want) to return home. 16. I (to think) he already (to go) home. 17. I (to find) the old man in the garden. He (to talk) to some children who (to stand) around listening to him. 18. He (to speak) a language we never (to hear) before.

4. Present Perfect or Present Perfect Continuous

1. The war _____ (rage) for 9 months now.
2. You _____ (write) down his e-mail address?
3. How long you _____ (work) for this company?
4. I _____ (queue) for half an hour so far.
5. You _____ (be) to the supermarket?
6. I not _____ (buy) a new dress since Christmas.
7. I not _____ (hear) anything from him for ages.
8. I _____ (wait) for you.
9. We not _____ (have) such a snowy winter since my daughter was born.
10. A lot of things _____ (change) since you left.
11. It _____ (snow) since yesterday morning.
12. I _____ (try) to catch a taxi for an hour now.
13. You _____ (pass) your driving test yet?
14. You _____ (book) the plane tickets?
15. His plane _____ (land) yet?

5. Past Simple / Past Continuous / Past Perfect Continuous / Past Perfect

1. I (talk) over the phone when they brought me the letter.
A talked
B had talked
C had been talking
D was talking
2. They (sit) in the room when the taxi arrived.
A sat
B had sat
C had been sitting
D were sitting
3. He quickly forgot everything he (learn) at school.
A learnt
B had learnt
C had been learning
D was learning
4. I visited Brazil in April. I (stay) at a nice hotel for a fortnight.
A stayed
B had stayed
C had been staying
D was staying
5. I (stay) at the hotel for a fortnight when I received your letter.
A stayed
B had stayed
C had been staying
D was staying
6. The musician (play) the piano for a whole hour when we came in.
A played
B had played
C had been playing
D was playing
7. Alice closed the magazine and rose from the sofa on which she (lie) for more than two hours.
A lay
B had lain
C had been lying
D was lying
8. A man (be) unconscious for a few minutes when an ambulance arrived.
A was
B had been
C had being
9. We (walk) along a forest road for two hours when we saw a house.
A walked
B had walked
C had been walking
D were walking
10. I (talk) over the phone for a whole hour when the porter knocked at the door.
A talked
B had talked
C had been talking
D was talking

TEST 6

1. Write sentences in the PASSIVE. Use these phrases:

* in the sea * at school * in the kitchen * at the post office * in Australia * in Italy * at weddings * in Mediterranean countries * in the cinema

Example: olives / grow - Olives are grown in Mediterranean countries.

1. films / show.....
2. meals / cook.....
3. stamps / sell.....
4. pandas / find.....
5. Italian / speak.....
6. confetti / throw.....
7. lessons / teach.....
8. sharks / find

2. Open the brackets.

1. When we (to come) to the station, the train already (to arrive). The passengers (to hurry) to occupy their seats in the carriages. 2. The concert (to be) a greater success than we (to expect). We were very glad. 3. He (to tell) me that if no one (to come) to meet me at the station, I (can) leave the suit-cases in the cloak-room and go to the hotel where he (to reserve) a room for me. 4. He (to be) here five minutes ago, but you (to be) out. He (to ask) me to tell you that he (to come) again tonight. 5. Lanny (to return) home after seven years of absence. During these seven years he (to study) in Cape Town where his people (to send) him. Lanny was glad at the thought that he (to do) what they (to hope) he (to do) and that soon he (to be) among his people again. 6. You (to read) "The Murder of Roger Ack-royd" by Agatha Christie? – No, I (not yet to read) it. But I (to hear) that it (to be) a very interesting book. I (to read) it as soon as I (to get) it.

3. Choose the necessary variant

1. She realized that nobody (will come/would come).
2. We understood that she (sees/saw) nothing.
3. He said he (will arrive/would arrive) in some days.
4. My mother was sure I already (have come/had come).
5. I didn't know they (are/were) in the room.
6. We supposed the rain (will stop/would stop) in some hours.
7. He said he never (has been/had been) to London.
8. We wanted to know who (is singing/was singing) in the next room.
9. I always thought he (is/was) a brave man.
10. When I saw him, he (is working/was working).
11. We know she always (comes/came) in time.
12. They thought he (will have finished/would have finished) his work by the evening.
13. She said she (has/had) a terrible headache.
14. We supposed they (will send/would send) us the documents.
15. He said he (has not seen/had not seen) us for ages.

4. Translate into English

1. Я думав, що ви зайняті.
2. Ми сподівалися, що він вміє плавати.
3. Ти знав, що він поїхав до Києва?
4. Я не знав, що він захворів.
5. Він сказав, що він надішле телеграму.
6. Роберт сказав, що його дружина все ще в лікарні.
7. Том був упевнений, що добре говорить російською.
8. Мій брат завжди говорив, що буде моряком.
9. Чекайте його. Він сказав, що прийде.
10. Боб сказав, що його дядько тільки що прибув з Парижа.
11. Джиммі сказав, що його брат вчиться водити машину.
12. Ми думали, що вони запросять нас.
13. Ми чули, що цей студент добре склав іспити.
14. Том сказав, що бачив цей фільм.

TEST 7

1. Choose the correct variant

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1. If it _____, we won't go to the park.</p> <p>a) will rain
b) rains
c) will not rain
d) doesn't rain</p> <p>2. You won't pass the exam, _____ you work hard.</p> <p>a) if
b) when
c) unless
d) as soon as</p> <p>3. When we _____ ready, I'll call you.</p> | <p>a) shall be
b) are</p> <p>4. You will pay back, as soon as you _____ a new job.</p> <p>a) find
b) will find</p> <p>5. I will see you when you _____ in Moscow next time.</p> <p>a) are
b) will be</p> <p>6. What will you do, when you _____ out the truth?</p> <p>a) will find out
b) have find out
c) find out</p> |
|--|---|

2. Complete the sentences

1. If you (to be) free, I (to come) to see you.
2. If I (to see) her, I (to be) glad.
3. If you (to be) busy, I (to leave) you alone.
4. If I (to live) in Odessa, I (to visit) Opera House every year.
5. If she (to know) English, she (to try) to enter the university.
6. If mother (to buy) a cake, we (to have) a very nice tea pa

3. Use the right form.

Читаючи англійські книги, я завжди користуюся словником.
 reading b) having read c) being read

Прочитавши книгу, він відніс її в бібліотеку.

reading b) having read c) having been read

3) Книга, прочитана мною вчора, дуже цікава.

reading b) read c) having been read

Лист, отриманий вчора

having received b) received c) receiving

Отримуючи лист

having received b) received c) receiving

Отримавши листа

having received b) received c) receiving

Хлопчик, який одержує лист

having received b) received c) receiving

Переглядаючи журнали

looking through b) having looked through c) looked through

Переглянувши журнали

looking through b) having looked through c) looked through

Журнал, переглянутий вчора

looking through b) having looked through c) looked through

4. Open the brackets using participle I or participle II.

.....(to smile) she entered the room.

The girl(to write) something on the blackboard is my friend.

This is a letter(to address) to you.

I like to read stories(to write) by this writer.

Do you know the boys (to play) tennis now?

.....(to read) this book I wrote out many useful expressions.

Nelly entered the room (to bring) the nice big doll.

Many people who came to the museum liked the pictures.....(to paint) by this artist.

There was a small kitten (to play) on the sofa.

While(to read) this book I always remember my childhood.

All stories.... (to write) by this writer are very funny.

Look at the children..... (to play) in the yard.

The report(to do) by Hammer is of great importance.

The boy asked questions.....(to look) at us.

Артикль

ARTICLE

Артикль - це службове слово, яке є одним з основних формальних ознак іменника.

Невизначений артикль.

INDEFINITE ARTICLE (A/AN)

Невизначений артикль використовується:

1. З обчислювальними іменниками в однині.

- This is a book.

- That is a popular song.
- 2. Згадуючи предмет вперше. Згадуючи цей же предмет вдруге, ми ставимо перед ним певний артикль the.
 - I watched a car on the road. The car stopped outside our house.
- 3. Перед іменниками, що позначають професію.
 - He is a doctor.
 - She works as (a) teacher.
- 4. У значенні "один".
 - He had hardly spoken a word.
- 5. У певних граматичних конструкціях:
 - a) It is a book. This is a picture.
 - Б) She has a cat.
 - В) There is a book on the table.
 - Г) What a clever man! What a fine building!

Визначений артикль. DEFINITE ARTICLE (THE)

Певний артикль використовується:

1. Перед іменниками, які позначають цілком конкретний (певний) предмет :
 - How did you like the film?
 - Where is the key?
2. С географічними назвами:
 - Частин світу – the South, the North, the West, the East
 - Деяких країн – the United Kingdom (UK), the United States of America (USA), the South African Republic, the Netherlands.
 - Океанів – the Atlantic Ocean, the Pacific Ocean, the Indian Ocean, the Arctic Ocean.
 - Морів – the Black Sea, the Caspian Sea.
 - Рік, озер, каналів – the Thames, the Hudson River, the Baikal, (но: Lake Baikal),
 - Трьох планет – the Sun, the Earth, the Moon.
 - The Pacific Ocean is very deep.
3. Коли іменник є єдиним у своєму роді:
 - the Sun, the Moon, the Earth, the Universe, the Galaxy, etc.
 - The sun is getting warmer.

Артикль не використовується NO ARTICLE

1. Артикль не вживається, якщо перед іменником стоїть присвійний або вказівний займенник, інше іменник в присвійному відмінку, кількісний числівник або заперечення «по».
 - He met my aunt at the airport.
 - I have received two letters.
2. Артикль не вживається з назвами / іменами:
 - Країн – England, Russia, Poland.

Материків – Asia, Europe, Australia.
 Міст – London, Kiev, Odessa.
 Штатів – Washington, California.
 Вулиць – Queen Street, Deribasovskaya Street.
 Планет (криме названих вище трех планет) – Mars, Pluto, Mercury...
 Днів тижня – Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, Sunday.
 Національностей – English, French, American.
 Місяців – January, February...
 Іменами людей – Alison, Marina, Jeff....
 Запам'ятайте:
 at school, at home, at work
 Where is the ... ?
 in front
 in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening at night
 to go to bed
 to have (cook, make, prepare) breakfast (dinner...)
 in the north, in the south, in the east, in the west
 by bus (by tram...)
 in spring (in summer...)
 to have a good time
 from morning till night
 all day long
 a lot of

Прийменник **PREPOSITION**

Прийменник - це службове слово, що виражає відношення іменника або займенника до інших слів у реченні.

Прийменники:
 in – в, через – Dorothy was born in June. We can meet you in 10 minutes.
 Into – в (всередину) – We are coming into the flat.
 On – на – The book is on the table
 to – на, до, в - Philip is walking to work. Come up to me. They are going to the theatre.
 At – у, в – Let's meet at the car. He came at 5 o'clock.
 Behind – позаду, за – Sharon is walking behind us.
 Under – під – The ball is under the box.
 Above – над – His photo is above the sofa.
 By - у – Joseph stood by the door and knocked.
 With – з (зі) – She was going with her daughter.
 From – із – My father is coming back from the theatre.
 About – про – We are talking about a new film.
 After – після – Isabel walks after breakfast.

Between – між – My house is between the market and the parking.
During - протягом – She was sleeping during the lesson.

Запам'ятайте:

By mistake – помилково

By accident – ненавмисно

By chance – випадково

By the way – до речі

By bus/train/car – на автобусі/поїзді/машині

For a walk – піти на прогулянку

For breakfast/dinner – на сніданок / обід

In fact – насправді

In case – у разі

In time – під час

In the morning/evening/afternoon – вранці / ввечері / днем

On television – по телевізору

On holiday – у відпустці

On foot – пішки

On Monday(Tuesday...) - в понеділок (вівторок ...)

Іменник

NOUN

Іменником називається частина мови, яка позначає предмет і відповідає на питання: who is this? What is this? (Хто це? Що це?).

1. Одухотворені іменники відносяться до чоловічого або жіночого роду залежно від статі і можуть замінюватися відповідно займенниками he він або she вона.

Наприклад:

My mother is a doctor. She is a doctor. Вона лікар.

Назви тварин можуть замінюватися займенником it.

The cat is in the yard. It is in the yard.

Якщо хочуть уточнити стать тварини, то вживають займенники he або she:

This is my dog. She is four years old.

3. Неживі іменники замінюються займенником it, який перекладається на російську мову в залежності від сенсу: він, вона, воно. наприклад:

The bag is on the desk. It is on the desk.

4. Деякі іменників жіночого роду утворюються від відповідних іменників чоловічого роду за допомогою суфікса -ess:

actor актор - actress актриса, host господар - hostess господиня, tiger тигр - tigress тигриця.

Назви таких транспортних засобів, як ship судно, корабель, boat човен, судно, car автомобіль, машина - зазвичай ставляться до жіночого роду і замінюються займенником she. Назви країн замінюються займенником it якщо мова йде про географічних утвореннях, або займенником she, якщо йдеться про країну, як політичному або економічну освіту.

Where is your car? – She is under repair.

France has decided to increase her trade with Russia.

Необчислювані іменники мають форму однини. Загальні обчислювальні іменники мають форму однини і множини. Іменники утворюють множину:

Шляхом додавання до однини закінчення -s. Воно читається як [z] після голосних і дзвінких приголосних:

a shoe - shoes

a hen - hens

або як [s] після глухих приголосних:

a bat - bats

a hat - hats

Якщо іменник закінчується на свистячий або шиплячий звук, тобто на букви s, ss, x, sh, ch, то для нього форма множини утворюється за допомогою закінчення -es [iz]:

a match – matches

a box – boxes

Якщо іменник закінчується на букву -у, перед якою стоїть голосна, то у множині -у змінюється на І і до слова додається закінчення -es:

a hobby - hobbies

a baby - babies

Якщо перед буквою -у стоїть голосна, то множина утворюється за загальним правилом за допомогою закінчення -s, а буква у залишається без змін:

a day - days

a way - ways

До іменників, які закінчуються на -о додається закінчення -es:

a potato – potatoes

a tomato – tomatoes

Виключення: kangaroos, radios, studios, zoos, kilos, photos, pros, pianos, concertos, dynamos, solos, tangos, tobaccos.

Якщо іменник закінчується на літери -f або -fe, то у множині вони змінюються на -v- і додається закінчення -es:

a wolf – wolves

a half – halves

a knife - knives

Виключення: proofs, chiefs, safes, gulfs, reefs.

Деякі іменники мають свої власні способи побудови множини:

a foot - feet (ступня - ступні)

a goose - geese (гусак - гуси)

a louse - lice (воша - воші)

a mouse - mice (миша - миші)

a man - men (чоловік - чоловіки)

a woman - women (жінка - жінки)

a person - people (людина - люди) (але: people - народ, нація; peoples - народи, нації)

a child - children (дитина - діти)

a tooth - teeth (зуб - зуби)

a ox - oxen (бик - бики)

Для деяких слів форма однини збігається з формою множини:

a sheep - sheep - (вівця - вівці)

a swine - swine - (свиня - свині)

a deer - deer - (олень - олені)

species - species - спеції

a fish - fish - (риба - риби)

Парні предмети як в англійській, так і в російській мові вживаються тільки у множині:

scissors - ножиці

spectacles - окуляри

trousers - штани

His trousers are new.

Деякі іменники в англійській мові хоч і закінчуються на -s, але, тим не менше, мають форму однини:

mathematics (математика)

physics (фізика)

electronics (електроніка)

news (новини)

billiards (більярд)

Mathematics is his favourite subject.

Присвійний відмінок іменників POSSESSIVE CASE

В англійській мові існує тільки два відмінки - загальний (common case) і присвійний (possessive / genitive case).

Загальний відмінок (common case) англійських іменників нічим не позначений, тобто іменники в цьому відмінку мають нульове закінчення (chair, car).

That woman is a sister of my neighbour. - Та жінка - сестра мого сусіда.

Присвійний відмінок іменника в англійській мові відповідає на питання whose? - чий? Грає роль визначення і стоїть перед визначеним іменником. Він позначає приналежність предмета. Іменник в присвійний відмінку має закінчення -'s.

That woman's laptop - ноутбук тієї жінки.

Для того щоб утворити присвійний відмінок іменників у множині, то потрібно просто додати апостроф (').

My teacher's son - син мого вчителя.

My teachers 'sons - сини моїх вчителів.

Присвійний відмінок у іменників children, men, women утворюється так само, як і у однини, тобто ми додаємо закінчення -'s.

Those women's bags - сумки тих жінок.

Her children's toys - іграшки її дітей.

Числівник NUMERAL

Числівник - частина мови, яка позначає кількість предметів або їх порядок при рахунку. Імена числівники діляться на кількісні і порядкові.

Cardinal Numerals (кількісні числівники):

- Кількісні числівники від 1 до 12 - прості. Вони не мають спеціальних закінчень.

1	one	7	seven
2	two	8	eight
3	three	9	nine
4	four	10	ten
5	five	11	eleven
6	six	12	twelve

- Кількісні числівники від 13 до 19 - закінчуються на суфікс – **teen**.

13	thirteen	17	seventeen
14	fourteen	18	eighteen
	n	19	nineteen

15 fifteen eighteen
16 sixteen nineteen

- Кількісні числівники, що позначають десятки, закінчуються на суфікс—**ty**.

20 twenty 60 sixty
30 thirty 70 seventy
40 forty 80 eighty
50 fifty 90 ninety

Ordinal Numerals (Порядкові числівники):

- Форму порядкових числівників від 1 до 3 слід запам'ятати:

1 – the first
2 – the second
3 – the third

Порядкові числівники від 4 до 20 утворюються від кількісних за допомогою суфікса – **th**.

4 – the fourth
5 – the fifth
6 – the sixth
7 – the seventh

При утворенні числівників, що позначають десятки, додається - **eth** і буква **y** змінюється на букву **i**.

ehirtieth sixtieth
fortieth seventieth
fiftieth eightieth

Складні числівники, наприклад, двадцять другого (22), тридцять третім (33) і т.д. при утворенні порядкового числівника змінюють форму тільки другого слова.

21 – the twenty-first
22 – the twenty-second
23 – the twenty-third

Примітка:

- десятки з одиницями пишуться через дефіс: twenty-one

- союз **and** вживається перед десятками, якщо їх немає, то перед одиницями:

1438 – one thousand four hundred **and** thirty-eight

100 – one (a) hundred

1,000 – one (a) thousand

1,000,000 – one (a) million

1,000,000,000 – a (one) milliard (в Англії); a (one) billion (в США)

Рік 1981 – nineteen eighty-one

Рік 1900 – nineteen hundred

Рік 2000 – two thousand

Займенники PRONOUNS

Особисті займенники (Personal pronouns).

Називний відмінок		Об'єктний відмінок	
Однина	I - я	me - мені, мене	
	he - він	him - йому, його	
	she - вона	her - їй, їй	
	it - воно, він, вона	it - йому/їй, його/її	
Множина	We - ми	us - нам, нас	
	you - ви, ти	you - вам, вас	
	they - вони	them - їм, їх	

Займенник «I» завжди пишеться з великої літери. Займенники «he / she» вживаються щодо одухотворених осіб; «It» - щодо неживих предметів, абстрактних понять і тварин.

He is a student of the university. It is in the centre of the city. Show him right away. - Він студент університету. Він знаходиться в центрі міста. Покажи йому дорогу.

Вказівні займенники (Demonstrative pronouns).

Однина	Множина
this – цей, ця, ці	these – ці
that – той, та, те	those – ті

This is my father. And that is my uncle. - Це мій батько. А там - мій дядько.
I do not like these apples. - Мені не подобаються ці яблука.

Присвійні займенники (Possessive pronouns).

Присвійні займенники служать визначеннями до іменника і завжди займають місце перед обумовленими іменниками. Якщо виникає необхідність вжити присвійний займенник без іменника, то існує спеціальна форма, яка називається абсолютною формою.

Особовий займенник	Присвійний займенник	
	приєднувальна форма	абсолютна

I (я)	my (мій, моя, моє, мої)	mine
he (він)	his (його)	his
she (вона)	her (її)	hers
it (воно)	its (його, її)	—
we (ми)	our (наш, наша, наше, наші)	ours
you (ви)	your (ваш, ваша, ваше, ваші)	yours
they (вони)	their (їх)	theirs

This is my brother Tom and that is his wife Betty with their children. - Це мій брат Том, а це його дружина Бетті і їхні діти.

I have red roses in my garden. But I think yours are more beautiful than mine. - У мене в саду є червоні троянди. Я вважаю, що ваші красивіше моїх.

Невизначені займенники «some, any, no.» Оборот "there is, there are"
(Indefinite pronouns some, any, no. There is, there are)

Some / any - невизначені займенники, які позначають невідоме (імовірно невелике) кількість якихось предметів або кілька речовини, матерії, рідини і т.п. Вони зазвичай ставляться замість артикля і визначають іменник, що стоїть після них.

Some вживається в стверджувальних реченнях з обчислювальними і необчислювальними іменниками і позначає «кілька» або «деякі»; «Трохи» або «кілька»:

I know some famous Russian writers. – Я знаю кілька знаменитих російських письменників.

We bought some coffee in the shop. Ми купили трохи кави в магазині.

Any вживається в питальних і негативних пропозиціях разом з обчислювальними іменниками в значенні «будь-які», «якісь» і разом з необчислювальними іменниками в значенні «скільки-небудь»; «Ніякі»:

Have you got any interesting English magazines to read? - У вас є якісь цікаві англійські журнали (почитати)?

Have you got any milk here? - Тут є молоко? (Скільки-небудь молока)

They have not got any mistakes in this sentence. - У цій пропозиції у них немає ніяких помилок.

Однак: **Some** може вживатися в питальних реченнях, якщо питання не відноситься до поєднання, що містить займенник some:

Will you have some coffee? - Ви будете (пити) каву?

Can you give me some milk, please? - Ви не могли б подати мені молоко, будь ласка?

Any може вживатися в стверджувальних реченнях після союзу if:

If I find any of your books, I'll send them to you. - Якщо я знайду будь-які ваші книги, я пришлю їх вам.

Any може вживатися в стверджувальних реченнях у значенні «будь-хто»:
Please take any book you like. Будь ласка, візьміть будь-яку книгу, яку захочете.

Займенник «**no**» має негативне значення «нічого» і пояснює іменник, наприклад:

There is no milk in the jug. - У глечики немає молока.

He has no friends. - У нього немає (ніяких) друзів.

Оборотом **there is / are** починаються пропозиції, що повідомляють про наявність чи існування (або відсутність) в певному місці або відрізку часу особи або предмета (осіб, предметів). Пропозиція починають оборотом **there is** (для єд.ч) / **there are** (для мн.ч.), за яким слідує іменник-підмет (з відносяться до нього словами), що позначає назву цього предмета або особи. Далі йде обставина місця або часу.

There is a dictionary on the desk. - На столі знаходиться словник.

There are some books on the shelf. - На полиці кілька книжок.

Are there any letters for me? - Для мене є листи?

How many books are there in your library? - Скільки книг в твоїй бібліотеці?

There was (для однини минулий час Past Simple)

There were (для множ. минулий час Past Simple)

There was a meeting at the club yesterday.- Вчора була зустріч в клубі.

There will be (майбутній час Future Simple)

There will be a good crop in this region this year. - В цьому році буде хороший урожай.

Займенники «щось, що-небудь, ніщо / хтось, хто-небудь, ніхто» (**something, anything, nothing/ somebody, anybody, nobody**)).

Від займенників «some, any, no» можуть утворюватися складні займенники: «somebody - anybody - nobody; something - anything - nothing; somewhere - anywhere - nowhere », і до них застосовуються ті ж правила вживання в різних типах пропозицій, як і для «some, any, no ».

+ Something -щось Somebody - хтось Somewhere - де-небудь, куди-небудь, десь

? Anything - дещо, що-небудь Anybody - дехто, хто-небудь Anywhere - де-небудь, куди-небудь

- Nothing - ніщо, Nobody - ніхто, Nowhere - ніде, нікуди.

З займенниками **something, nothing, anything, somebody, nobody, anybody** вживаються дієслова 3 особи однини.

There is somebody in the room. - У кімнаті хтось є.
Is there anything on the table? - На столі щось є?

При наявності в реченні займенників **nothing, nobody, nowhere** додаткових заперечень не потрібно.

Nobody knows him. - Ніхто його не знає.

She has nothing in her bag. - У неї в сумці нічого немає.

I can not find him. Чи he is nowhere. - Я не можу його знайти. Його ніде немає.

Займенники «багато / мало / трохи / кілька».

Pronouns many/ few/ a few, much/ little/ a little.

Багато: **many и much**

Much використовується з необчислюваними іменниками, зазвичай в негативних пропозиціях і питаннях.

I have not much money. - У мене немає багато грошей.

Many також означає «багато», але використовується з обчислювальними іменниками, часто в негативних пропозиціях і питаннях

Have you been to many countries? - Ви були в багатьох країнах?

Слова **much и many** також вживаються в конструкціях **as much as / as many as, too much / too many, so much / so many, how much / how many.**

They have seen this film so many times - Вони бачили цей фільм так багато разів.

His parents are too reserved. - Його батьки занадто стримані.

Багато: **a lot of**

У стверджувальних реченнях частіше вживаються a lot of (lots of, plenty of) як з обчислювальними іменниками, так і з необчислюваними.

There is a lot of milk in the cup. - У чашці багато молока.

They have got a lot of friends in London. - У них багато друзів в Лондоні.

Мало: **little и few**

означають «мало», причому little використовується з необчислюваними іменниками, a few - з обчислювальними.

Hurry up! There's little time! - Поспішай! У нас мало часу!

I bought few clothes. - Я купив мало речей

a few, a little означають «трохи, але досить».

Will you give me a little water? - Чи не дасте ви мені трохи води?

I bought a few apples. - Я купив трохи (кілька) яблук.

Зворотні займенники. Reflexive pronouns.

Займенники, що закінчуються на «-self (-selves у множині)», називають поворотними. Зворотні займенники показують, що дія, названа в реченні, спрямоване на особу, яка її виконує, отже зворотний займенник має бути за формою пов'язаний з підметом.

I - myself
you - yourself
he - himself
she - herself
we - ourselves
you - yourselves
they - themselves

На російську мову вони перекладаються поворотним дієслівним суфіксом «-ся (-сь)» або займенником «себе (собі, собою, сам)».

She washed herself. - Вона вмилася.

They talked about themselves. - Вони говорили про себе.

I can take care of myself. - Я можу подбати про себе сам.

Ступені порівняння прикметників THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Прикметники утворюють два ступені порівняння: порівняльну (comparative) і чудову (superlative). Позитивним ступенем прикметників називається їх основна форма, що не виражає ступеня порівняння.

Односкладові прикметники.

Вищий ступінь утворюється за допомогою суфікса -er, Найвищий ступінь утворюється за допомогою суфікса -est.

При цьому дотримуються наступні правила:

- В односкладових прикметників, що закінчуються на одну приголосну з попереднім коротким голосним звуком, кінцева приголосна буква подвоюється (щоб зберегти закритість складу):

big великий - bigger - the biggest

thin тонкий - thinner - the thinnest

- Якщо прикметник закінчується на у з попередньої приголосної, то у змінюється на і:

busy зайнятий - busier - the busiest

happy щасливий - happier - the happiest

Примітка: Але якщо перед у стоїть голосна, то у залишається без зміни:

grey сірий - greyer - the greyest

- Кінцева голосна е (німе e) перед суфіксами -er, -est опускається:

white білий - whiter - the whitest

Двоскладові і багатоскладові прикметники.

Багатоскладові і більшість двоскладових прикметників утворюють порівняльну ступінь за допомогою слова *more* - більше, а найвищий ступінь - *most* - самий (найбільш). А менша і найнижча ступінь якості виражаються словами *less* - менше і *least* - найменш.

Difficult важкий - *more difficult* важче - *most difficult* найважчий
beautiful красивий - *more beautiful* красивіше - *most beautiful* найкрасивіший

expensive дорогою - *less expensive* менш дорогий - *least expensive* найменш дорогий

Виключення

good хороший - *better* краще - *(the) best* самий кращий

little маленький - *less* менше - *least* найменший

bad поганий - *worse* гірше - *worst* найгірший

much багато (з необчисл.)

many багато (з обчисл.) - *more* більше - *most* найбільше

old (старий) - *older* старший (о візросі) - *oldest* найстарший

- *elder* старший у сім'ї (про старшинство) - *eldest* найстарший в родині

far далеко - *farther* далекий (про відстань) - *farthest* самий далекий

- *further* більш дальній (по порядку) - *furthest* самий дальній

late пізній - *later* пізніший (про час) - *latest* найпізніший

- *latter* останній з двох (по порядку) згаданих - *last* найостаннійший (по порядку)

Однакову якість двох предметів (осіб, явищ) виражається прикметниками в позитивній ступеня (основна форма) в конструкції з союзами *as ... as* в значенні такий же ... як, так само ... як:

He is as tall as his brother. - Він такий же високий, як і його брат.

This text is as difficult as that one. - Цей текст такий же важкий, як і той.

Різна якість предметів виражається конструкцією *not so / as ... as* в значенні не так ... як, не такий ... як:

He is not so (as) tall as his brother. - Він не такий високий, як його брат.

The problem is not so simple as it seems. - Ця проблема не така проста, як здається.

При порівняльному ступені прикметника вживається союз *than*:

Ann is taller than Kate.

Дієслово «to Have (have got)» (мати). THE VERB TO HAVE (HAVE GOT)

Як самостійна частина мови дієслово **to have** в теперішньому часі має 2 форми:

have - для всіх осіб, крім 3-ї особи однини

has - для 3-ї особи однини

В минулому часі дієслово **to have** має форму **had**, в майбутньому - **shall have, will have**.

Форми дієслова **to have**:

Теперішній час

I have we have

You have

They have

He / She / It has

Минулий час

had

Майбутній час

shall have

will have

We have breakfast at 7 o'clock in the morning. - Ми снідаємо о 7 годині ранку.

She has English lessons every day. - У неї уроки англійської кожен день.

They had a splendid holiday last year. - У них була прекрасна відпустка в минулому році.

You will have a new flat next month. - У вас буде нова квартира в наступному місяці.

Часто в розмовній мові замість **have, has** вживається словосполучення **have got, has got** (для 3 л.ед.ч.) (короткі форми 've got i' s got) з тим же значенням, особливо коли мова йде про тимчасове володінні або тільки що придбаному предмет або предметах:

We've got a nice flat. - У нас хороша квартира.

Have you got any pets? - У вас є домашні тварини?

Заперечення виражається формою дієслова **to have** з запереченням **not** або з негативним займенником **no**: **has not = has not**

have not = have not

She has not (has not) got any problems. - У неї немає ніяких проблем.

I have got no pen here. - У мене немає ручки.

У сучасній британській мові часто запитання й негативна форми завжди утворюються за допомогою допоміжного дієслова **do (does)** - в теперішньому часі і **did** в минулому часі:

Do you have a sister? - У тебе є сестра?

Does he have any children? - У нього є діти?

We did not have money. - У нас не було грошей.

Стійкі вираження:

to have dinner / breakfast - обідати, снідати

to have tea / coffee, etc. - пити чай, каву і т.д.

to have a bath / a shower - прийняти ванну, душ

to have a shave / a wash - поголитися, помитися

to have a rest / a sleep / a dream, etc. - відпочити, поспати, помріяти і т.д.

to have a holiday / a good time, etc. - відпочити, добре провести час

to have a walk - гуляти
to have a dream - помріяти,
to have a toothache - відчувати зубний біль

Дієслово «to be» (бути) THE VERB TO BE

Дієслово to be - бути, існувати, бути, перебувати.
В теперішньому часі (Present Simple) має форми:
I **am** We are
He / She / It **is** You are, They **are**
Скорочена форма:

I am = I'm
He is = He's
They are = They're
I am in the room.- Я (перебуваю) в кімнаті.
The book is on the table. - Книга лежить на столі.
They are from Paris. - Вони з Парижа.

В минулому часі (Past Simple) має форми:
was - для однини
were - для множ.
I was strong - Я був сильним.
We were happy - Ми були щасливі.

В майбутньому часі (Future Simple) має форми:
I, we **shall be**
You, they, he, she, it **will be**
We shall be happy to see you. - Ми будемо щасливі вас бачити.
He will be at home tomorrow. - Він буде вдома завтра.
Скорочена форма:
I'll, she'll

Для утворення негативної форми досить поставити негативну частку **not** після дієслова to be:

I am not happy. - Я не щасливий.
The books were not interesting. - Книги не були цікаві.
He is not our teacher. - Він не наш учитель.
She will not be his wife. - Вона не буде його дружиною.
Скорочена форма:
is not = isn't
are not = aren't
was not = wasn't

were not = weren't

will not = won't

Дієслово **to be** не вимагає допоміжного дієслова для утворення питальної або негативної форми. Щоб поставити запитання потрібно поставити дієслово to be перед підметом:

Am I happy? - Yes, you are. - Я щасливий?

Was the book interesting? - Yes, it was. - Книга була цікава?

Will he be our teacher? - No, he will not. - Він буде нашим учителем?

Інфінітив INFINITIVE

Інфінітив - це дієслівна форма, яка відповідає на питання що робити? що зробити?. Формальною ознакою інфінітива є частка to, яка стоїть перед ним, хоча в деяких випадках вона опускається. Негативна форма інфінітива утворюється за допомогою частки not, яка ставиться перед ним:

Try not to use bad language - Намагайтеся не вживати грубих слів

У ролі підмета:

To smoke is harmful - Курити шкідливо. = Куріння шкідливе.

Інфінітив вживається в функції іменної частини складеного іменного присудка, слідуючи за дієсловом-зв'язкою to be (am, is, are, was, were, ...), який іноді перекладається як значить, полягає в тому, щоб:

Our task is to do the work well. - Наше завдання полягає в тому, щоб зробити цю роботу добре

The point is to achieve the aim - Головне - досягти мети.

У ролі доповнення інфінітив може вживатися разом з питальними словами: what, whom, which, when, why, where, how і in.

I do not know what to answer him - Я не знаю, що відповісти йому.

Після порядкових числівників: the first - перший, the second - другий і т.д. або слів the last - останній, the next - наступний, the only - єдиний інфінітив перекладається особистою формою дієслова або визначальним підрядним реченням:

He was the first to realize the situation. - Він зупинився, щоб поговорити з Мері.

Інфінітив, як правило, вживається з часткою to, яка є його граматичним ознакою. Однак частка to іноді опускається:

- після допоміжних і модальних дієслів: can, could, must, may, might, will, shall, would, should (і їх негативних форм can not = can not, must not = must not і т.п.).

She can dance - Вона вмє танцювати.

- після виразів had better - краще (б), would rather - надаю перевагу; краще б:

You had (= You'd) better help her - Ти краще б допоміг їй.

- після дієслів виражають сприйняття за допомогою органів почуттів: to feel відчувати, to hear чути, to notice помічати, to see бачити і ін.

I saw him jump - Я бачив, як він стрибнув.

- після дієслів: to make в значенні - змушувати і to let - дозволяти:

He made me help him - Він змусив мене допомагати йому.

Але якщо ці дієслова вживаються в пасивному стані, то інфінітив вживається з to:

She was made to repeat the story. - Її змусили повторити (свою) розповідь.

Якщо в реченні є інфінітиви, об'єднані союзом and або or, то частка to вживається тільки перед першим інфінітивом:

I want to come and see your new house. - Я хочу приїхати (і) подивитися твій новий будинок.

Запам'ятайте:

Chi ne is hard to please. Йому важко догодити.

She is pleasant to look at. - У неї приваблива зовнішність.

I have something to tell you. - Мені треба вам дещо сказати.

There is nothing to be gained by it. - Цим нічого не досягнеш.

There is nothing to be done. - Нічого не поробиш.

There is much to be done. - Треба багато зробити.

The house is to let. - Будинок здається в найм.

Who is to blame? - Хто винен?

Be sure to come. - Неодмінно приходьте.

There is nothing left to do but wait. - Єдине, що залишається - це чекати.

Модальні дієслова MODAL VERBS

Модальними називаються дієслова, що виражають не дія, а ставлення до нього: можливість, необхідність, здатність, можливість і т. Д. Модальні дієслова не змінюються по особах і числах.

Модальне дієслово can:

вживається для вираження можливості здійснення дії

I can type very fast. - Я можу друкувати дуже швидко.

для вираження сумніву, здивування

Can they arrive tomorrow? - Невже вони приїдуть завтра?

Модальне дієслово could:

для вираження можливості, здібності в минулому

I could type very fast. - Я вміла друкувати дуже швидко.

в головній частині умовних пропозицій

If I had much money I could buy a new car. - Якби у мене було багато грошей, я б міг купити машину.

Модальне дієслово may:

для вираження дозволу

You may use my phone. - Ви можете скористатися моїм телефоном.

для вираження припущення

He may know her. - Можливо, він знає її.

Модальне дієслово might:

для вираження припущення в сьогоденні і майбутньому з більшим ступенем сумніву

He might know her. - Він, може бути, знає її (а може і ні).

Модальне дієслово must:

для вираження повинності.

You must do it. - Ти повинен зробити це.

для вираження припущення

It must be him. - Це має бути він.

для вираження заборони

You musn't touch it. - Тобі забороняється чіпати це.

Модальне дієслово ought to:

для вираження морального боргу, заради сьогодення і майбутнього

He ought to help me. - Він повинен мені допомогти.

Модальне дієслово need:

для вираження необхідності. Вживається в формі Present Simple в питальних і негативних пропозиціях

Need I do it? - Мені потрібно робити це?

No, you need not do it. - Ні, не потрібно робити цього.

Модальне дієслово to be вживається для вираження необхідності вчинення дії, відповідно до попередньої домовленості. Після нього вживається частка to.

My friend is to call you tomorrow. - Мій друг повинен зателефонувати вам завтра.

Модальне дієслово to have to використовується для вираження вчинення дії в силу певних обставин.

She had to go there. - Їй довелося поїхати туди.

Дієслово should використовується для вираження морального боргу або поради.

Tom should not have done it. - Тому не треба було робити цього.

Негативні скорочені форми:

can not, could not, need not, should not, oughtn't, mayn't, must not

Теперішній тривалий час PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE

Час Present Continuous зазвичай вказує на процес, що триває безпосередньо в момент мовлення. На це можуть вказувати контекст або такі слова:

now (зараз),
at the moment (в поточний момент) і т.д.

Look! (Подивися)

Present Continuous утворюється за допомогою дієслова to be в теперішньому часі і дієприкметника теперішнього часу (Participle I) смислового дієслова. To be в теперішньому часі має три форми:

am - 1 особа, од. (I am shaving.)

is - 3 особа, од. (He is reading.)

are - 2 особа од. І всі форми множ. (They are sleeping.)

(I'm, he's, she's, it's, we're, you're, they're)

I'm reading a new book. - Я читаю нову книгу (зараз, в даний момент).

He is watching TV. - Він дивиться ТБ. (Зараз, в даний момент).

У питальних речень допоміжне дієслово виноситься на місце перед підметом:

Are you using this dictionary - Ви використовуєте цей словник?

Why are you laughing? - Чому ти смієшся?

У негативних реченнях за допоміжним дієсловом йде негативна частка not. Форми is і are при цьому можуть бути скорочені до is not і are not відповідно.

Radio is not (is not) working. - Радіо не працює.

Примітка:

Англійські дієслова, пов'язані зі сприйняттям (notice, hear, see, feel ...), емоціями (love, hate, like ...), процесами розумової діяльності (think, believe, understand ...), володінням (have, possess ...) не використовуються в часах групи Continuous, тому що вони самі по собі позначають процес. Замість них використовується час Present Simple:

I hear you, do not shout. - Я чую тебе, не кричи.

Теперішній невизначений час.

THE PRESENT INDEFINITE (SIMPLE) TENSE

The Present Indefinite (Simple) Tense - теперішній невизначений час вживається для позначення звичайних, регулярно повторюваних або постійних дій, наприклад, коли ми говоримо про чийсь або звички, режим дня, розкладах і т.д. .. Тому з дієсловами в the Present Indefinite часто вживаються такі прислівники, як

always - завжди,

often - часто,

seldom - рідко,

usually - зазвичай,

never - ніколи,

sometimes - іноді,

every day - кожен день і т.д.

Стверджувальна форма простого теперішнього часу утворюється шляхом постановки інфінітива без частки «to» після підмета. Однак, якщо підмет стоїть у формі 3-ї особи однини, то до основи дієслова додається суфікс «-s (-es)». Правила додавання суфікса «-s (-es)» до основи дієслова повністю збігаються з правилами додавання суфікса «-s (es)» множини до основи іменника.

My friend lives in a hostel. - Мій друг живе в гуртожитку.

The school year begins in September. - Навчальний рік починається у вересні.

She drives a car. - Вона водить машину.

Для застосування *запитальної форми* в простому теперішньому часі необхідне допоміжне дієслово «do», а в третій особі однини потрібно поставити допоміжне дієслово «does» (закінчення -s (-es) "не додається до змістового дієслова):

Do you play chess? - Yes, I do. - Ви граєте в шахи? - Так.

Does he speak English well? - Yes, he does. - Він добре говорить англійською? - Так.

Where does she study? - Де вона навчається?

У питаннях до підмету зберігається прямий порядок слів. Допоміжне дієслово не використовується, а присудок вживається у формі 3-ї особи однини.

Who gives you English books? - Хто дає тобі книги на англійській мові?

Негативна форма дієслів в простому теперішньому часі утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова «do (does)» і заперечення «not», які ставляться перед смисловим дієсловом:

We do not play chess. - Ми не граємо в шахи.

He does not smoke. - Він не палить.

Скорочена форма: do not = do not i does not = does not

I do not play hockey. - Я не граю в хокей.

The computer does not work. - Комп'ютер не працює.

Минулий невизначений час THE PAST INDEFINITE (SIMPLE) TENSE

Час Past Simple використовується для позначення дії, яка сталася в певний час в минулому і час здійснення якого вже минув. Випадки вживання Past Simple:

- Вказівка на просту дію в минулому

I saw Jeremy in the bank - Я бачив Джеремі в банку.

- Регулярні, повторювані дії в минулому

The old man often visited me. - Старий часто мене відвідував.

Перерахування послідовності дій в минулому

I heard a strange sound, looked back, and saw a huge cat sitting on the table.- Я почув дивний звук, озирнувся і побачив величезного кота сидівшого на столі.

Для уточнення моменту вчинення дії в минулому при використанні часу Past Simple зазвичай використовуються такі слова, як

yesterday вчора,
last week минулого тижня,
an hour ago - годину тому,
the other day - днями,
on Monday - в понеділок,
in 2000 - у 2000 році,
during the holidays - під час канікул і т.д.

Існує два види дієслів: правильні (regular) і неправильні (irregular). Past Simple правильних дієслів утворюється шляхом додавання в усіх особах закінчення **-ed (-d)** до форми інфінітива:

- дієслова, що закінчуються в інфінітиві на у з наступное -е, втрачають цю голосну при додаванні -ed:

They lived in Paris two years ago. - Вони жили в Парижі 2 роки тому.

- дієслова, що закінчуються в інфінітиві на -у з попередньою приголосною, змінюють у на і:

He tried to be polite. - Він намагався бути ввічливим.

- якщо односкладове дієслово в інфінітиві має короткий голосний звук і закінчується на одну приголосну, то остання при утворенні форм минулого часу подвоюється:

She dropped her purse. - Вона впустила гаманець.

- якщо багатоскладне дієслово закінчується на одну приголосну з попереднім коротким голосним звуком і наголосом, падаючим на останній склад, то приголосна подвоюється:

He admitted this fact. - Він визнав цей факт.

Закінчення -ed має три варіанти вимови:

1. Якщо слово закінчується на глуху або шиплячу згідну, то вимовляємо [t]: like - liked, kiss - kissed.

2. Якщо слово закінчується на дзвінку приголосну або голосну, то вимовляємо [d]: fill - filled, destroy - destroyed.

3. Якщо слово закінчується на -t або -d, то закінчення -ed буде читатися як [ɪd]: point - pointed, load - loaded.

Щоб утворити Past Simple «неправильного» дієслова використовується його 2-а форма.

He She went to Madrid last year. - Вона їздила в Мадрид в минулому році. Питальна форма як правильних, так і неправильних дієслів утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова to do в минулому часі (did) і форми інфінітива смислового дієслова (без to), причому допоміжне дієслово ставиться перед підметом. У питанні до підмету (who, whose ...) допоміжне дієслово не використовується, а смислове дієслово вживається у формі минулого часу:

Did you see him yesterday? - Ти бачив його вчора?

Who saw him yesterday? - Хто бачив його вчора?

Негативна форма як правильних, так і неправильних дієслів утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова to do в минулому часі (did), частки not та форми інфінітива смислового дієслова, причому not ставиться після допоміжного дієслова:

I did not play football last weekend. - Я не грав в футбол на минулих вихідних.

Скорочена форма did not = did not

Майбутній простий час FUTURE SIMPLE

Простий майбутній час зазвичай використовується з обставинами:

tomorrow (завтра),

next year (в наступному році),

in five years (через п'ять років),

in 2035 (в 2035 році)

Випадки вживання Future Simple:

-Вказівка на просту дію в майбутньому

-Регулярні, повторювані дії в майбутньому

-При перерахуванні послідовності дій в майбутньому

Для того, щоб поставити дієслово в тимчасову форму Future Simple, потрібно використовувати його початкову форму і допоміжне дієслово shall (для першої особи) або will (друга і третя особа). В усному мовленні shall і will найчастіше скорочуються до форми 'll, яка може використовуватися у всіх особах.

Примітка:

У сучасній англійській, особливо в усному мовленні, will став використовуватися і в першій особі:

I will go to Shanghai next summer. - Наступного літа я поїду в Шанхай.

У питальних речень допоміжні дієслова shall або will ставляться перед підметом. Дієслово залишається після підмета в своїй початковій формі:

Will your boss agree with our conditions? - Ваш бос погодиться з нашими умовами?

Shall we go to the beach? - Ми підемо на пляж?

У негативних реченнях за допоміжним дієсловом слідує негативна частка not. Разом вони можуть бути скорочені до форми shall not (частіше в брит. Англійському) або will not:

I shall not (shall not) let you down. - Я вас не підведу.

Fred will not (will not) agree to help us. - Фред не погодиться нам допомогти

Примітка:

- Якщо ймовірність події 100%, то можливе використання Present Continuous в значенні майбутнього часу:

She is playing tennis tomorrow. - Вона точно буде грати завтра в теніс, це її розклад на завтра.

- Для розкладів і графіка руху поїздів, автобусів, літаків; початку, закінчення заходів часто використовується Present Simple.

The football match starts at 16.00. - Матч розпочнеться о 16.00, це розклад.

- Для вираження наміру вчинити дію або впевненості в його скоєнні в майбутньому часто вживається оборот to be going to:

I am going to learn French next year. - Я збираюся (маю намір) вивчати французьку мову в майбутньому році.

Is he going to spend his summer vacation in London? - Він збирається провести літні канікули в Лондоні?

Примітка:

Future Simple не вживається в придаткових реченнях часу і умови (if, as soon as, when, till, until ...). У цих випадках використовується Present Simple:

He will phone as soon as he arrives. - Він подзвонить, як тільки добереться на місце.

If it does not rain, we'll go to the forest. - Якщо не буде дощу, ми підемо в ліс.

Майбутній в минулому FUTURE IN THE PAST SIMPLE TENSE

Позначає дію, що є майбутнім по відношенню до певного моменту в минулому. Це форми Future in the Past утворюються аналогічно відповідним формам Future, тільки замість допоміжних дієслів shall, will вживаються форми їх колишніх часів **should i would**. Запитання й негативна форми утворюються за тими ж правилами, що і форми Future.

Скорочені форми: I should = I'd, we should = we'd, he would = he'd, they would = they'd, should not = should not, would not = would not.

I think I will come by the morning train. - Я думаю, що приїду ранковим поїздом

I thought I would come by the morning train. - Я думав, що приїду ранковим поїздом.

Минулий тривалий час PAST CONTINUOUS (PROGRESSIVE)

Час Past Continuous вказує на процес, що тривав в певний момент або період в минулому. На відміну від часу Past Simple, Past Continuous вказує на процес, що відбувався в конкретний момент часу в минулому:

yesterday at 5 o'clock - вчора о 5 годині

from 5 till (to) 7 - з 5 до 7

the whole day - весь день

when you called (when rain started) - коли ти подзвонив (коли почався дощ)
і т.п.

Past Continuous утворюється за допомогою дієслова to be в минулому часі (was, were) і дієприкметника теперішнього часу (**Participle I**) смислового дієслова.

I was sleeping when someone knocked at the door. - Коли я спав, хтось постукав у двері.

We were reading from 4 till 5. - Ми читали з 4 до 5.

У питальних реченнях допоміжне дієслово виноситься на місце перед підметом:

Were you sleeping when I called? - Ти спав, коли я подзвонив?

What was she doing the whole day? - Що вона робила весь день?

У негативних пропозиціях за допоміжним дієсловом слідує негативна частка not. Форми was і were при цьому можуть бути скорочені до was not і were not відповідно.

At 8 in the morning our elevator was not (was not) working. - О 8 годині ранку не працював наш ліфт.

Майбутній тривалий час FUTURE CONTINUOUS (PROGRESSIVE) TENSE

The Future Continuous Tense (майбутній тривалий час) позначає тривалу дію, яке буде відбуватися в певний момент або відрізок часу в майбутньому.

At ten o'clock - о десятій годині,

at that moment - в цей момент

all day long - весь день,

the whole year - весь рік,

from 5 till 6 - з п'яти до шести

Future Continuous утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова to be у формі майбутнього часу (**shall be, will be**) і форми дієприкметника теперішнього часу (**Present Participle**) основного дієслова, тобто дієслова із закінченням **-ing**. Shall вживається з 1-ю особою однини і множини, а will з іншими особами. Однак в сучасній англійській дієслово will може вживатися в усіх особах і числах:

My granny will be still working in the garden at noon. - Опівдні бабуся ще буде працювати в саду.

If the weather is fine at that time, we shall be roller skating. - Якщо погода в цей час буде хороша, ми будемо кататися на роликах.

У питальній формі перше допоміжне дієслово ставиться перед підметом:

Will you be playing football the whole day? - Ти будеш грати в футбол весь день?

Негативна форма утворюється за допомогою частки not (will = will not, shall not = shall not)

He will not be staying in the city the whole summer. - Він не залишиться в місті все літо.

FUTURE IN THE PAST CONTINUOUS (PROGRESSIVE) TENSE

Future in the Past Continuous вживається для вираження тривалої дії, яке відбудеться в певний момент в майбутньому, або майбутньої дії, що впливає з обставин. Обидва дії співвідносяться з минулим.

And she thought that at this time next Sunday she would be approaching her beloved Paris. - І вона думала, що в цей же час наступної неділі вона вже буде під'їжджати до свого улюбленого Парижу.

Теперішній доконаний час **PRESENT PERFECT TENSE**

Час Present Perfect позначає дію, яке завершилося на цей момент або завершено в період теперішнього часу, зазвичай переводяться на українську мову в минулому часі. Ознаками Present Perfect є слова:

never (ніколи),
ever (коли-небудь),
just (тільки що),
already (вже),
yet (ще), і т.д.
this year - в цьому році
for ages - роками
since - з (з тих пір як)
today - сьогодні

Час Present Perfect утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова **to have** (has для 3 особа, од.) В теперішньому часі і в **минулих часів** значимого дієслова, тобто його «**третьої форми**».

У питальних речень допоміжне дієслово виноситься на місце перед підметом, а значуще дієслово залишається після нього:

Have you seen this film? - Ти дивився цей фільм?

Has she ever been to London? - Вона колись була в Лондоні?

У негативних реченнях за допоміжним дієсловом слідує негативна частка not. Форми have і has при цьому можуть бути скорочені до have not і has not відповідно:

I have not seen him since then. - З тих пір я його так і не бачив.

Випадки вживання Present Perfect:

Якщо тому хто говорить важливий сам факт події, дії, а не його час або обставина:

I have visited the Louvre 3 times. - Я відвідав Лувр три рази.

Якщо час події має значення, то потрібно використовувати час Past Simple:

I visited the Louvre last year. - Я відвідав Лувр в минулому році.

Якщо період, в який відбулося дію, ще не закінчився:

I have finished reading "Dracula" this week. - На цьому тижні я закінчив читати «Дракулу».

Для позначення дій, які почалися в минулому і продовжуються в момент розмови:

I've studied Spanish since childhood. - Я вчив іспанську з дитинства.

I have not seen my hometown for 45 years. - Я не бачив своє рідне місто 45 років.

Минулий доконаний час PAST PERFECT

Past Perfect вживається для вираження минулої дії, яка вже відбулася до певного моменту в минулому. За змістом ця форма представляє собою "передпройшовший" час, так як вона описує вже вчинену минулу дію по відношенню до моменту, також що є минулим.

Past Perfect утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова to have у формі минулого часу (had) і при участі колишніх часів смислового дієслова - Past Participle (III-я форма або ed-форма).

Обставинами часу більш-менш точно вказують час, до якого дія закінчилася:

Already - вже	by then - до цього / той час
yet - ще	by that time - на той час
by two o'clock - о другій годині	by the end of the week - до кінця тижня
by noon - до полудня	by the end of the year - до кінця року
by Saturday - до суботи	before - перед
by the 15th of September - до 15 вересня	

Питальні речення:

Had you brushed your teeth before you went to bed? - Ти почистив зуби, перш ніж піти спати?

Негативні:

How did you hope to pass the exam if you had not (had not) even opened the textbook? - Як ти сподівався скласти іспит, якщо ти до цього навіть підручник не відкрив?

МАЙБУТНІЙ ДОСКОНАЛИЙ FUTURE PERFECT

Позначає дію, яка закінчиться до певного моменту або початку іншої дії в майбутньому або буде продовжуватися тривати після нього.

Час Future Perfect утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова **to have** в майбутньому часі і при участі колишніх часів значимого дієслова, тобто його «третьої форми». To have в майбутньому часі має дві форми: **shall have** - 1 особа. **will have** - 2 і 3 особа.

Обставинами часу більш-менш точно вказують час, до якого дія закінчилася:

by five o'clock - на п'яту годину
by noon - до полудня
by Saturday - до суботи

by that time - на той час
by the end of the year - до кінця року
by then - на той час
before - перед

We shall have translated the article
by five o'clock.

- Ми (вже) переведемо статтю на п'яту
годину.

I shall have finished the report
by tonight.

- Я закінчу писати доповідь до вечора.

The workers will have built
this school by September 1st.

- Строитель побудують цю школу до
1 вересня.

ТЕПЕРІШНІЙ ДОСКОНАЛИЙ ТРИВАЛИЙ ЧАС PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS

Present Perfect Continuous вказує на дію, яка почалося в минулому, тривала протягом деякого часу і або закінчилося безпосередньо перед розмовою або все ще триває в момент розмови.

for an hour протягом години
for a month протягом місяця
for a long time протягом довгого
часу, довго, давно
since yesterday з учорашнього дня
since five o'clock з п'яти годин
since morning з ранку

since she returned з тих пір, як вона
повернулася
lately недавно, останнім часом
all my life все життя
all this year весь цей рік
all day long весь день
these three week ці три тижні

Present Perfect Continuous утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова **to be в часі Present Perfect**, тобто допоміжне дієслово має вигляд **have been / has been** (для третьої особи однини особи - he, she, it). До допоміжного дієслова додається дієприкметник теперішнього часу, утворений від основного дієслова (тобто **інфінітив дієслова + закінчення -ing**).

I have been waiting for you for two hours. - Я чекаю тебе дві години.

Have you been waiting for me for two hours? - Ти чекаєш мене кілька годин?

I have not been waiting for you for two hours. - Я не чекаю тебе дві години.

Як скорочень використовуються такі форми:

I've been waiting...

He's been waiting...

We haven't been waiting...

She hasn't been waiting...

Haven't you been waiting?..

Hasn't he been waiting?..

Примітка: дієслова, які не мають форм Continuous, слід вживати в Present Perfect.

I have known him for three years. - Я знаю його вже три роки.

МИНУЛИЙ ДОСКОНАЛИЙ ТРИВАЛИЙ ЧАС PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE

Past Perfect Continuous вказує на дію, яка почалося в минулому, тривала протягом деякого часу і або закінчилося безпосередньо перед якимось моментом в минулому або все ще не закінчилося до якогось моменту в минулому.

for two hours протягом двох годин	since I came з тих пір, як я прийшов
for a month протягом місяця	all his life все його життя
for some time протягом деякого часу	all day long весь день
since five o'clock з п'яти годин	

Past Perfect Continuous утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова **to be у формі Past Perfect (had been)** і дієприкметника теперішнього часу основного дієслова - **Present Participle (IV-я форма або ing-форма)**.

I had been typing this text for 2 hours and then found it on the Internet. - Я набирав цей текст дві години, а потім знайшов його в Інтернеті.

I saw many puddles. Had it been raining? - Я бачив багато калюж. Йшов дощ?
Of course he did not want to sleep! He had not been working like a horse all the week. - Зрозуміло, йому не хотілося спати! Він не працював як віл весь тиждень.

Якщо не вказано, як довго відбувалася дія, то замість Past Perfect Continuous вживається Past Continuous:

I was working when my brother came - Я працював, коли прийшов мій брат.

МАЙБУТНІЙ ДОСКОНАЛИЙ ТРИВАЛИЙ ЧАС FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE

Future Perfect Continuous використовується для опису дії, яка починається до певного моменту в майбутньому і триває до цього моменту. Акцент робиться на тому, як довго триває дія, і, звичайно, присутня вказівка на період часу. Future Perfect Continuous вживається дуже рідко.

Час Future Perfect Continuous утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова **to be в часі Future Perfect (will have been)** і дієприкметника **теперішнього часу**, утвореного від основного дієслова (тобто інфінітив дієслова + закінчення -ing).

We are leaving for London in May. When you come there in August, we will have been staying in England for three month. - Ми поїдемо до Лондону в травні. Коли ти приїдеш туди в серпні, ми вже пробуємо в Англії три місяці.

I hear, you are going to retire next month? For how many years will you have been working here by that time? - Я чув, в наступному місяці Ви виходите на пенсію? Скільки на той час Ви вже тут будете працювати?

By October we will not have been living here for five years. - До жовтня ми не будемо жити тут вже п'ять років.

Наказовий спосіб IMPERATIVE MOOD

Наказовий спосіб висловлює наказ або прохання (порада).

Стверджувальна форма. Для того щоб утворити ствердну форму наказового способу в англійській мові, необхідно вживати форму інфінітива, але при цьому не використовувати частку to.

to write - писати. Write - Пиши (ть).

Send this letter, please - Відправ цей лист, будь ласка.

Look at the mirror - Подивися в дзеркало.

Негативна форма

Для того щоб скласти негативне речення з наказовим способом, необхідно використовувати негативну форму допоміжного дієслова to do. to do - do not. Сміслові дієслова, як і в позитивній формі, вживаються без частки to.

Do not look - Не дивися (ться).

Do not speak - Не говори (ть).

Пасивний залог PASSIVE VOICE

Форма застави показує, чи є підмет у реченні (особа або предмет) виробником або об'єктом дії, вираженої присудком. У пасивному стані не вживаються часи Future Continuous, Future Continuous in the Past і всі форми Perfect Continuous ..

Пасивна заставка (passive voice) показує, що особа або предмет, виражене підметом, відчуває дію на собі:

The big cake was baked by Sam. - Великий пиріг був випечений Семом.

Passive voice утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова **to be** у відповідному часі, особі і числі і дієприкметник минулого часу (**Participle II**) значимого дієслова:

Indefinite Passive (to be + Participle II)

He newspapers are delivered every morning. (Present Indefinite Passive)
Газети доставляються щоранку.

This book was bought a month ago. (Past Indefinite Passive) Ця книга була куплена місяць тому.

The letter will be mailed tomorrow. (Future Indefinite Passive) Лист буде відправлено завтра.

Continuous Passive (to be + being + Participle II).

The house is being repaired. (Present Continuous Passive) Будинок ремонтується.

When John was ill he was being taught at home. (Past Continuous Passive)

Коли Джон хворів, його навчали вдома.

Perfect Passive (to have + been + Participle II)

This letter has been brought by the secretary. (Present Perfect Passive)

Секретар приніс лист. (Лист принесено секретарем)

He decided to become a writer only when his first story had been published. (Past Perfect Passive) Він вирішив стати письменником, тільки коли його перше оповідання було надруковано.

By the 1st of July the last exam will have been passed (Future Perfect Passive) До першого липня останній іспит буде вами зданий.

УЗГОДЖЕННЯ ЧАСІВ THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES

Узгодження часів в англійській мові полягає в наступному: час дієслова підрядного речення залежить від часу головної пропозиції. Якщо головна пропозиція виражена дієсловом в одній з форм минулого часу, то в придаткових пропозиціях не можуть вживатися форми теперішнього і майбутнього часу дієслів.

Якщо дія в підрядному реченні відбувається одночасно з дією в головному реченні, то потрібно використовувати Past Simple або Past Continuous:

They told us, "We are going to the library." - Вони сказали нам: «Ми йдемо в бібліотеку».

They told us they were going to the library. - Вони сказали нам, що йдуть в бібліотеку.

Якщо дія в підрядному реченні передує дії в головному реченні, то дієслово в підрядному використовується в Past Perfect або Past Perfect Continuous:

She told us, "It was raining a lot." - Вона нам сказала: «Було багато дощів».

She told that it had been raining a lot. - Вона нам сказала, що було багато дощів.

Якщо дія в підрядному реченні слідує після дії в головному, то потрібно використовувати один з часів Future-in the-Past:

She said: "I will try to get the highest mark on the exam." - Вона сказала: «Я постараюся заробити на іспиті кращу оцінку».

She said she would try to get the highest mark on the exam. - Вона сказала, що постаріється заробити на іспиті кращу оцінку.

Таблиця узгодження часів в англійській мові

Время в прямой речи	Present Indefinite	Present Continuous	Present Perfect	Past Indefinite	Past Perfect	Future Indefinite
Время в косвенной речи	Past Indefinite	Past Continuous	Past Perfect	Past Perfect	Past Perfect	Future Indefinite in the Past

Виятки:

Час в підрядному реченні може залишитися без зміни, якщо в ньому вказано точний час:

He told us, "I took part in the Moscow Olympic games in 1980." - Він сказав нам: «Я брав участь в Московських Олімпійських іграх 1980 року».

He told us he took part in the Moscow Olympic games in 1980. Він розповів нам, що - в 1980 році брав участь в Московських Олімпійських іграх.

Або якщо йдеться про загальновідомий факт:

Newton proved that bodies attract each other. - Ньютон довів, що тіла притягують один одного.

Умовні пропозиції CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

Нульовий тип (Zero Conditional) - закономірність, логіка, порада

Умовні речення нульового типу описують закономірності розвитку подій (засновані на досвіді, здоровому глузді), а не припущення

Вживання Present Simple:

If you do not eat for a long time, you become hungry. - Якщо ти довго не можеш їсти, ти зголоднієш.

If you do not want to pay for it, you can now download it via a torrent for free.
- Якщо Ви не хочете платити за неї, тепер Ви можете її завантажити торрентом безкоштовно.

Перший тип (First Conditional (Conditional I) -прогноз, намір, обіцянка (теперішній/ майбутньому / минулому)

Умовні речення першого типу пророкують можливий розвиток подій в майбутньому. Умова зазвичай виражається формою дієслова в теперішньому часі (який по контексту має значення майбутнього і перекладається на російську мову дієсловом в майбутньому часі), а наслідки описуються дієсловом в майбутньому часі з допоміжним дієсловом will:

If you make a mistake, someone will let you know. - Якщо Ви зробите помилку, хтось Вам скаже про це.

If he asks me, I will consider his proposal carefully. - Якщо він запитає мене, я уважно розгляну його пропозицію.

Другий тип (Second Conditional (Conditional II)) - малоймовірне, практично нездійсненна умова (в теперішньому або майбутньому)

Умовні речення першого типу висловлюють гіпотетичні ситуації, що сприймаються що говорять як малоймовірні, практично нездійсненні. Дієслово-присудок придаткової пропозиції стоїть в минулому часі (перекладається на українську мову дієсловом в умовному способі з часткою «б»), в головному - використовується допоміжне дієслово *would* і інфінітив смислового дієслова:

If I liked parties, I would attend more of them. - Якби я любив вечірки, я б частіше на них ходив.

If it rained tomorrow, people would dance in the street. - Якби завтра пішов дощ, люди стали б танцювати на вулиці.

У таких пропозиціях використовується форма умовного способу дієслова *to be* - *were* (для всіх осіб і чисел). Форма *was* іноді вживається в розмовній мові, проте, більш грамотним буде вживання форми *were*. Крім того, для неофіційного стилю типова фраза "If I were you ..." - «на твоєму місці ...» (дослівно: «якби я був тобою ...»).

If I were rich, I would live downtown. - Якщо б я був багатий, я жив би в центрі міста.

If he were running for governor, I would vote for him. - Якби він висувався на пост губернатора, я голосував би за нього.

Підрядні речення з формою *were* можуть утворюватися без союзу *if*, зі зворотним порядком слів:

If I were rich, ... / Were I rich, ... - Якби я був багатий, ...

If I were to fly, ... / Were I to fly, ... - Якби мені потрібно було летіти, ...

Умовні речення першого і другого типів можуть мати близькі значення, але речення другого типу мають на увазі набагато менший ступінь ймовірності скоєння зазначених дій:

Умовна пропозиція першого типу:

If you leave now, you will still catch your train. - Якщо ти підеш зараз, то ще встигнеш на поїзд.

Умовна пропозиція другого типу:

If you left now, you would still catch your train. - Якби ти пішов зараз, то ще встиг би на поїзд.

Третій тип (Third Conditional (Conditional III)) - нездійсненна, нереальна умова в минулому часі.

Умовні речення третього типу висловлюють гіпотетичні ситуації в минулому, фактично не відповідають дійсності (на думку мовця). У підрядному реченні використовується дієслово в формі *Past Perfect*, а в головному реченні - допоміжне дієслово *would* і смислове дієслово в формі перфектно інфінітива (збігається з утворенням *Present Perfect*).

If you had called me, I would have come. - Якби ти подзвонив мені, я б прийшов (але ти не подзвонив).

Would he have succeeded if I had helped him? - Чи впорався б він, якби я йому допоміг? (Але я не допоміг).

Герундій THE GERUND

Неособиста форма дієслова, проміжна між іменником і дієсловом. Герундій має чотири форми - одну просту і три складних, утворених за допомогою допоміжних дієслів. З чотирьох форм герундія в основному вживається простий герундій - Indefinite Active (ing - форма), а вже форма Perfect Passive вживається дуже рідко.

Smoking is forbidden. - 'Паління заборонено'.

Найчастіше герундій відповідає українському дієслівному іменнику, що закінчується на -аніє, -еніє. Коли відповідного дієслівного іменника немає, герундій перекладається інфінітивом:

Imagine, I enjoy learning English grammar. - 'Уяви собі, що я отримую задоволення від вивчення англійської граматики'.

Reading is to the mind what exercise is to the body. 'Читання для розуму теж саме, що фізкультура для тіла'.

Герундій вживається

1) в якості підмета:

Swimming is pleasant. 'Купання приємне'.

2) як частина присудка після дієслів to finish, to start, to continue, to go on, to keep та ін.:

He finished reading the newspaper. - 'Він закінчив читання газети'.

3) як предложне доповнення:

I am fond of reading. '-Я обожнюю читання'.

4) як пряме доповнення:

Do you mind my smoking here? 'Ти не заперечуєш проти мого куріння?'

5) як обставина часу:

On coming home I took a bath. 'Після повернення додому я прийняв ванну'.

6) як обставина способу дії:

Instead of going home he went to the movies. - 'Замість того щоб піти додому (дослівно: замість походу додому), він відправився в кіно'.

Дієприкметник THE PARTICIPLE

В англійській мові є два дієприкметника:

1. Дієприкметник I (Participle I або Present Participle) - дієприкметник теперішнього часу. Має дві форми:

а) Present Participle Simple (Active) - проста форма, утворюється шляхом додавання закінчення -ing до вихідної форми дієслова, (форма з -ing, або IV форма); Відповідає українському дієприкметнику теперішнього часу і

дієприслівників недоконаного виду: reading - читає, читаючи, resting - відпочиваючий, відпочиваючи.

Reading English books I wrote out new words. - Читаючи англійські книги, я виписував нові слова.

Present Participle Simple (Passive) - утворюється за допомогою допоміжного дієслова to be у формі Present Participle Simple, а саме - being і смислового дієслова в формі Past Participle (форма із закінченням -ed або III форма).

The house being built in our street is very good - Будинок, що будується на нашій вулиці, дуже хороший.

б) Present Participle Perfect - утворюється за такою формулою: having + 3 форма дієслова.

Відповідає українському дієприслівнику доконаного виду: having written - написавши, having read - прочитавши.

Having packed my things, I called for a taxi. - Упакувавши свої речі, я викликав таксі.

Perfect Participle Passive - варіант Perfect Participle в пасивному стані, утворюється в такий спосіб: having + been + 3 форма дієслова.

Having been examined by the doctor, they were allowed to join the sports club. - Після того як їх оглянув лікар, їм дозволили вступити в спортклуб. (Пасивний стан Passive voice)

2. Причастя II (Participle II або Past Participle) - дієприкметник минулого часу. Дієприкметник від перехідних дієслів відповідає українському пасивному дієприкметнику минулого часу: opened -Відкритий, dressed -одітий, made -Зроби.

The broken cup was on the floor. - Розбита чашка лежала на підлозі.

The doctor sent for lived in the next village. - Лікар, за яким послали, проживав в сусідньому селі.

IRREGULAR VERBS LIST

Infinitive	Past Simple	Past Participle	Переклад
be	was, were	been	бути
beat	beat	beaten	бити
become	became	become	ставати
begin	began	begun	починати
bend	bent	bent	гнути
bet	bet	bet	тримати парі
bite	bit	bitten	кусати
blow	blew	blown	дути, видихати
break	broke	broken	ламати, розбивати, руйнувати
bring	brought	brought	приносити, привозити, доставляти
build	built	built	будувати, споруджувати
buy	bought	bought	купувати
catch	caught	caught	ловити, зловити, схопити
choose	chose	chosen	вибирати, обирати
come	came	come	приходити, підходити
cost	cost	cost	коштувати, обходитися
cut	cut	cut	різати, розрізати
deal	dealt	dealt	мати справу, розподіляти
dig	dug	dug	копати, рити
do	did	done	робити, виконувати
draw	drew	drawn	малювати, креслити
drink	drank	drunk	пити

drive	drove	driven	їздити, підвозити
eat	ate	eaten	їсти, поглинати, поїдати
fall	fell	fallen	падати
feed	fed	fed	годувати
feel	felt	felt	відчувати
fight	fought	fought	битися, боротися, воювати
find	found	found	знаходити, виявляти
fly	flew	flown	літати
forget	forgot	forgotten	забувати про (що-небудь)
forgive	forgave	forgiven	прощати
freeze	froze	frozen	замерзати, завмирати
get	got	got	отримувати, добиратися
give	gave	given	дати, подати, дарувати
go	went	gone	йти, рухатися
grow	grew	grown	рости, зростати
hang	hung	hung	вішати, розвішувати, висіти
have	had	had	мати, володіти
hear	heard	heard	чути, почути
hide	hid	hidden	ховати, приховувати
hit	hit	hit	ударяти, вражати
hold	held	held	тримати, утримувати, затримувати
hurt	hurt	hurt	поранити, заподіювати біль, забити
keep	kept	kept	зберігати, підтримувати
know	knew	known	знати, мати уявлення

lay	laid	laid	класти, покласти, покривати
lead	led	led	вести за собою, супроводжувати, керувати
leave	left	left	залишати, йти, їхати
lend	lent	lent	позичати, давати в борг
let	let	let	дозволяти
lie	lay	lain	лежати
light	lit	lit	запалювати, світитися, висвітлювати
lose	lost	lost	втрачати
make	made	made	робити, створювати, виготовляти
mean	meant	meant	значити, мати на увазі, на увазі
meet	met	met	зустрічати, знайомитися
pay	paid	paid	платити, оплачувати, розраховуватися
put	put	put	ставити, поміщати, класти
read	read	read	читати, прочитати
ride	rode	ridden	їхати верхи, кататися
ring	rang	rung	дзвеніти, дзвонити
rise	rose	risen	сходити, вставати, підніматися
run	ran	run	бігти, бігати
say	said	said	говорити, сказати, вимовляти
see	saw	seen	бачити
seek	sought	sought	шукати, розшукувати

sell	sold	sold	продавати, торгувати
send	sent	sent	посилати, відправляти, відсилати
set	set	set	встановлювати, ставити, призначати
shake	shook	shaken	трясти, струшувати
shine	shone	shone	світити, сяяти, опромінювати
shoot	shot	shot	стріляти
show	showed	shown, showed	показувати
shut	shut	shut	закривати, замикати, зачиняти
sing	sang	sung	співати, наспівувати
sink	sank	sunk	тонути, занурюватися
sit	sat	sat	сидіти, сідати
sleep	slept	slept	спати
speak	spoke	spoken	говорити, розмовляти, висловлюватися
spend	spent	spent	витрачати, витрачати, проводити (час)
stand	stood	stood	стояти
steal	stole	stolen	красти
stick	stuck	stuck	встромляти, приклеювати
strike	struck	struck, stricken	ударяти, бити, вражати
swear	swore	sworn	клястися, присягати
sweep	swept	swept	підмітати
swim	swam	swum	плавати, плисти

swing	swung	swung	гойдатися, крутитися
take	took	taken	брати, хапати, взяти
teach	taught	taught	вчити, навчати
tear	tore	torn	рвати, відривати
tell	told	told	розповідати
think	thought	thought	думати, мислити, міркувати
throw	threw	thrown	кидати, кидати, метати
understand	understood	understood	розуміти, осягати
wake	woke	woken	прокидатися, будити
wear	wore	worn	носити (одяг)
win	won	won	перемогти, виграти
write	wrote	written	писати, записувати

ENGLISH TENSES ACTIVE

	Present	Past	Future
Simple	Допоміжне дієслово: do / does Закінчення: -, -s Формула: V (+s) + I work + He writes – I do not work – He does not write ? Do I work? ? Does he write?	Допоміжне дієслово: did Закінчення: -ed, – Формула: V2 + I worked + He wrote – I did not work – He did not write ? Did I work? ? Did he write?	Допоміжне дієслово: will / shall Закінчення: – Формула: will/shall + V + I will work + He will write – I won't work – He won't write ? Will I work? ? Will I write?
Continuous	Допоміжне дієслово: be (is / am / are) Закінчення: -ing Формула: am/is/are + Ving + I am working + He is writing – I am not working – He is not writing ? Am I working? ? Is he writing?	Допоміжне дієслово: was / were Закінчення: -ing Формула: was/were + Ving + I was working + He was writing – I was not working – He was not writing ? Was I working? ? Was he writing?	Допоміжне дієслово: will be / shall be Закінчення: -ing Формула: will/shall + be + Ving + I will be working + He will be writing – I won't be working – He won't be writing ? Will I be working? ? Will he be writing?
Perfect	Допоміжне дієслово: have / has Закінчення: -ed Формула: have/has + V3 + I have worked + He has written – I have not worked	Допоміжне дієслово: had Закінчення: -ed Формула: had + V3 + I had worked + He had written	Допоміжне дієслово: will have / shall have Закінчення: -ed Формула: will/shall + have V3 + I will have worked

	– He has not written ? Have I worked? ? Has he written?	– I had not worked – He had not written ? Had I worked? ? Had he written?	+ He will have written – I won't have worked – He won't have written ? Will I have worked? ? Will he have written?
Perfect Continuous	Допоміжне дієслово: have been / has been Закінчення: -ing Формула: have/has + been + Ving + I have been working + He has been writing – I have not been working – He has not been writing ? Have I been working? ? Has he been writing?	Допоміжне дієслово: had been Закінчення: -ing Формула: had been + Ving + I had been working + He had been writing – I had not been working – He had not been writing ? Had I been working? ? Had he been writing?	Допоміжне дієслово: will have been / shall have been Закінчення: -ing Формула: will/shall + have been + Ving + I will have been working + He will have been writing – I won't have been working – He won't have been writing ? Will I have been working? ? Will he have been writing?

TOPICS

Stage 1.

Topic 1. About myself.

1. Read the text. Try to translate it using the words given below:

to introduce oneself – знайомитися

to leave school – закінчувати школу

to graduate from the University – закінчення університет

a surgeon – хірург

handsome – красивий (чоловік)

sociable – товариський

to work overtime – понаднормова робота

a bread-maker – годувальник

to be fond of – захоплюватися

slim – тонкий, вишуканий

pretty – красива, мила (жінка)

elegant – елегантний

smart - добре одягнений, модний, витончений

to be in (to have) a habit of doing smth. – мати звичку щось робити

senior – старший

junior – молодший

to be married – бути одруженим (одружена)

nephew – племінник

gaiety – веселість

endless – нескінченний

to be retired on pension – бути на пенсії

Before I start talking about my family let me introduce myself. I am Katrin. I am 17. I was born in Odessa. I have left school this year. Now I am a student of the South Ukrainian National Pedagogical University named after K.D. Ushinsky.

And now I am going to tell you about my family. We are a family of five. We are a small and friendly family. And we are happy to be living together and are getting on all right.

To begin with, I am going to talk first about my father. His name is Sergey. He is 45. He works as a surgeon in a hospital. He is neither, nor young. He is a good-looking man, handsome, rather thin with dark brown hair just beginning to go grey. He is a very sociable person. What I don't like about my dad is that he is always busy. Very often he works overtime. He is a bread-maker in our family. He is fond of going to the country on weekends, because he enjoys working in the garden.

My mother's name is Anna. She is three years younger than my father. She works as a teacher at a nursery school. My mother is rather slim and pretty, she is always elegant and smart. In short, she is a pleasant-looking woman of about 40. She always has a lot of work to do both at work and about the house. She is fond of her

work and spends a lot of time there. But she has to cook the food for all the family at home. Shopping and cooking is nearly half a day's work for her. But my granny and I are in habit of helping her about the house.

Alex is my elder brother. He is six years senior to me. So he is 23 already. He has graduated from the University and he is an economist by profession now. Alex is married. His wife is a journalist. They are three in the family. They have got a child, my nephew. It is a lovely little boy of two with golden hair and dark brown eyes and a spirit that is always bright and happy, full of joy and gaiety.

And finally a few words about my granny. To tell you the truth, she is my best friend. She always listens to my endless stories about my friends and my school life. She is retired on pension now but in her youth and her older age she worked as a teacher in a school. I must admit, she is a very understanding person.

Put it into a few words, we are a united and friendly family.

2. Now study some additional words and expressions in use when dwelling upon this topic.

Relatives by birth:

- a family – родина
- parents – батьки
- a mother (mum) – мати (мама)
- a father (dad) – батько (тато)
- a son – син
- a daughter – дочка
- a sister – сестра
- a brother – брат
- a grandfather – дідусь
- a grandmother – бабуса
- a great-grandfather – прадід
- a great-grandmother – прабабка
- a grandson – онук
- a granddaughter – онука
- grandparents – бабуся і дідусь
- grandchildren – онуки
- an uncle – дядько
- an aunt – тітка
- a nephew – племінник
- a niece – племінниця
- a cousin – двоюрідний брат (-а сестра)

Relatives by marriage

- a husband – чоловік
- a wife – дружина
- a father-in-law – тесть, свекор
- a mother-in-law – теща, свекруха
- a son-in-law – зять (чоловік дочки)

a daughter-in-law – невістка (дружина сина)
a brother-in-law – деверь (чоловік сестри)
a sister-in-law – золовка (дружина брата)
a stepfather – вітчим
a stepmother – мачуха
an adopted child – усиновлена дитини
an orphan – сирота
a widower – вдовець
a widow – вдова
twins – близнюки
to get married – одружуватися
divorce – розлучення, (to...) розлучатися
single – холостий
descendant – нащадок
direct descendant – прямий нащадок
hereditary – спадкові, традиційні у родині
heir – наслідник
progeny – покоління, потомство
relatives – родичі
(one's flesh and blood – родичі)
She (he) is
aggressive – агресивна (ий)
generous – щедра (а)
talented – талантлива (ий)
sensitive – чуттєва (ий)
good-hearted – добросердечна (ий)
simple – hearted – простодушна (ий)
empty-headed – пустоголова (ий)
cheerful – весела (ий)
intelligent – розумна (ий)
educated – освічена(ий)
awkward – незграбна (ий)
shy – сором'язлива (ий)
easy-going - покладиста (ий)
brave – хоробра (ий)
stubborn – уперта (ий)
envious – заздрісна (ий)
sophisticated – витончена

3. Answer in writing the following questions:

What's your first name?

What's your surname?

How old are you?

Where are you from?

What country are you from?
What is your nationality?
Is your family large (small)?
Have you got any sisters or brothers?
Is your sister (brother) younger or elder than you?
How many persons are there in your family?
What is your address?
What is your phone number?
What are your hobbies?
What do you enjoy most?
What kind of education did you get?
Did you get any diploma (certificate)?
What is your favorite subject?
Are you a good student?
When did you leave school?
What are you going to be?

4. Dwell upon the topic "About myself".

Topic 2. About my friend.

1. Read the text. Try to translate it using the words given below:

former school-mates – колишній шкільні друзі
bosom, friend – справжній друг
to be pretty in one's own way – бути гарним на свій лад
burn-up – курносий (а)
frecles – конопушки
forehead – лоб
plain – некрасивий
to do well at school – добре вчитися в школі
to be fond of – любити, подобатися
plain books – художні книги
to be of great help – бути дуже корисним, необхідним
to be at hand – бути під рукою
to go in for sports – захоплюватися, займатися спортом
terribly – жахливо
to grab – хапати
to be bored at everything – нічого не подобається
amusing – кумедний
to flunk an exam – провалитися на екзамені
a sunny soul by nature – бути веселим по природі
a short-story contest – конкурс на написання оповідання
to hold – проводити, триматися
to quarrel – сваритися

to make up with smb. – миритися з кимось

I have a lot of friends. Most of them are my former schoolmates. But my bosom friend is Lena. She is 18. Lena isn't very tall, but she is pretty in her own way.

She has red curly hair and a turn-up nose. Lena wears spectacles and when spring comes there are plenty of freckles on her cheeks, forehead and nose. But all that doesn't make her plain or ugly. I like Lena because she is well-bred, jolly and kind.

She does well at the University though she has an unbreakable rule: never to study at night no matter how many written reviews are coming in the morning. She is also fond of reading plain books, and Lena sometimes thinks that one book isn't enough to read, she has two or three books going at once. My friend has a lot of books at home, and she buys them wherever she goes.

She says that the books are of great help any time and they always must be at her hand. Her idea is that it's much easier to have a library of her own comprising lots of books than to try keeping everything in her head. Lena goes in for sports and she was a member of our school basketball team. She is terribly quick and strong.

It's a pleasure to watch her playing basketball: while others are hopping about in the air she always gets under their feet and grabs the ball. I don't like people who are bored at everything and who never make the slightest effort to be pleasant. That's why my friend is Lena, the most amusing person in the world. She thinks everything is funny – even flunking an exam.

Lena is a sunny soul by nature and always takes the slightest excuse to be amused. My friend has an imagination and her own style. Usually she writes nice compositions and once even won short-story contest that our school wallpaper holds every year.

Lena and I are good friends. We help each other a lot and try not to quarrel. But when sometimes it comes to quarrelling we try to make it up at once.

2. Now study some additional words and expressions in use when dwelling upon this topic.

to gather – збирати(ся)

to chat – зручно базікати, вести бесіду, розмовляти

to make (past made, p.p. made) noise – шуміти, створювати шум

noise – шум

to my mind – на мою думку, я думаю, що

dull – нудний

boring – нецікавий, нудний

able – спроможний

to support – підтримувати, допомагати

to enjoy – любити (щось), отримувати задоволення

guys – розм. малий, хлопець

hardworking – зд. працелюбивий

to discuss – обговорювати

Maths –розм. математика
to be keen on – сильно або серйозно захоплюватися чимось
to trust – вірити, довіряти, розраховувати на когось
trouble – біда, пригода, проблеми, печаль

3. Answer in writing the following questions:

How old is Katrin?
Does she wear spectacles? Describe her appearance.
Does she do well at the University?
What unbreakable rule has she?
What books is she fond of reading?
Does Katrin go in for sports?
Was she a member of the school basketball team?
Why is it a pleasure to watch her playing basketball?
Is Katrin a sunny soul by nature? What makes you think so?
Has she an imagination? Prove it.

4. Dwell upon the topic “About my friend”.

Topic 3. About my flat.

1. Read the text. Try to translate it using the words given below:

square – квадратний
sideboard – сервант
wardrobe – шафа
opposite – протилежний
cosy – затишний
divan-bed – диван
alarm-clock – будильник
mirror – зеркало
dressing-table – туалетний столик
lamp-shade – абажур
a built-in wardrobe – встроєна шафа
coat-hanger – вішалки
to hang (hung) – вішати
study – кабінет
furniture – меблі
necessary pieces – необхідні речі
cushion – диванна подушка
standart lamp – торшер

We have a nice flat in a new block of flats. Our flat is on the fourth floor. It has all modern conveniences: central heating, gas, electricity, cold and hot water, a lift and a chute to carry rubbish down. There are three rooms, a kitchen, a bathroom and

a hall in our flat. The living-room is the largest and most comfortable room in the flat. In the middle of the room we have a square-table with six chairs round it. To the right of the dinner-table there is a wall-unit which has several sections: a sideboard, a wardrobe and some shelves.

At the opposite wall there is a piano and stool before it. Between the two large windows there is a little table with a colour TV set on it. Near the TV set there are two cosy armchairs. A small round table, a divan-bed and a standard lamp are in the left-hand corner. This small table is for newspapers and magazines. My father is used to having a rest sitting on this divan-bed reading books, newspapers, magazines or watching TV.

The bedroom is smaller than the living-room and not so light as there is only one window in it. In this room there are two beds with a bedside-table between them. An alarm-clock and a small lamp with a pink lamp-shade are on the table. In the left-hand corner there is a dressing-table with a big mirror.. In this room we have a built-in wardrobe with coat-hangers to hang clothes on. There is a thick carpet on the floor and plain light-brown curtains on the window.

The third room is my study. It is not large but very cosy. There isn't much furniture in it, only the most necessary. It has a writing-table and an armchair before it. In the right-hand corner there is a bookcase full of books, magazines and newspapers. A small table with a radio is standing in the left-hand corner. Near it there is a sofa with some cushions. In my opinion, the study is the best room in our flat.

But the warmest place in our flat is the kitchen, I think – the place where the whole family gathers every evening not only to have supper together, but also to speak and rest. I like the

English proverb: "My home is my castle" because my flat is, indeed, my castle.

2. Now study some additional words and expressions in use when dwelling upon this topic.

apartment house – багатоквартирний будинок

barrack – барак

building – будівля

bungalow – бунгало, одноповерховий будинок з верандою

cabin / log cabin – будиночок, бревенчата хатина

camp site – кемпінг

cottage – котедж, заміський будинок

country house – заміський будинок (як правило, багатий особняк)

dwelling – житло, будинок

dwelling house – будинок

dwelling place – місце проживання

flat (*BrE*) / apartment (*AmE*) – квартира

guesthouse – будиночок для гостей

hotel – готель

hovel – лачуга

hut – хижина
inn – маленький готель
lodge – мисливський будиночок, приміщення воротаря, приміщення садівника, і т.п.
lodgment / lodgement – житло, квартира
lodging – житло
mansion – особняк
motel – мотель
multistoried building / multi-storey building – висотка, багатоповерхова будівля
private residence – великий приватний будинок
resort – курорт
shanty – хибарка
summer house – літній будинок
youth hostel / hostel – хостел (*недорогий публічний готель*,) для молоді

3. Answer in writing the following questions:

Have you a house or a flat?
How many rooms are there in your flat?
Has your flat all modern conveniences? What are they?
What room is the largest in your flat?
What is there in the middle of the room?
Is there a piano in the living-room?
What is there near the TV set?
How many windows are there in the bedroom?
What is on the bedside-table?
What color curtains are there on the window?
What room is very cozy?
Is there much furniture in the study?
What is there in the right-hand corner of the study?
What is standing in the left-hand corner?

4. Dwell upon the topic “About my flat”.

Topic 4. My Working Day.

1. Read the text. Try to translate it using the words given below:

daily actions – щоденні дії
more or less – більш чи менш
final – останній
variation – зміни, відступ
regularly – регулярно
weekdays – робочі дні, будні дні
weekend, days off – вихідні
as a matter of fact – справа в тому, що; як насправді

to get used (to) – звикати
to take a shower – приймати душ
to consist of – складатися з
boiled egg – варене яйце
on one's way (to) – по дорозі у
ordinary – звичайний
timetable – розклад (занять)
canteen – їдальня
packed lunch – сніданок (запакований)
twice – двічі
to listen to – слухати
to look through – проглядати
home assignment – домашнє завдання
to cope with – справлятися
properly – належним чином
normally – звичайно, нормально
to do well – добре вчитися
without any effort – без будь-яких зусиль
to improve – поліпшувати
I must admit – Я хотів би відзначити; визнати, що
to relax – розслабитися, відпочивати
to go to bed – лягати спати

I want to describe you my daily actions which I do, more or less regularly, on weekdays during my study at the University. There are little variations in my life; all days except weekends look very much the same.

On weekdays my working day begins early in the morning. As a matter of fact, I am not an early-riser, that's why I hate getting up early, but I got used to it, I usually get up at about 7 o'clock. Then I do my morning exercises and go to the bathroom to wash my face and hands with soap and clean my teeth with a toothpaste. I don't take a shower in the morning; I generally do it late in the evening before going to bed. As a rule, I have a quick light breakfast which consists of a cup of coffee or tea, a boiled egg or an omelet and a cheese or sausage sandwich. After breakfast I put on my coat, took my bag and leave for the University.

As my University is not far from my house, it takes me 10 minutes to get there. I never take a bus on my way to school, I usually walk there.

Three or four pairs a day are the ordinary timetable. I seldom have lunch in the canteen, because I usually pack one in my bag (an apple and a sandwich).

The classes at the University are over at about three o'clock. Twice a week I stay at the University later to play table-tennis or I'm busy with the supplementary English language lessons.

When I came home my mother always has dinner ready just in time. Then I change my clothes and have a rest. While resting, I listen to the music or look through the newspapers or magazines. Then I start doing my home assignments. It takes me

about five hours to cope with my homework properly. I normally finish doing my homework at 10 o'clock in the evening. So I haven't much time for television and friends, because I have to work hard at all the subjects during my study. But sometimes I manage to see an interesting film.

I do well in most subjects without any effort. Besides, I have manage to help my mother about the house and do our shopping, go to the library and have private lessons in English in order to improve it.

And I must admit that the University life is a very interesting page of my life. I have good friends at the University and some lessons are interesting.

After supper I usually relax for some time and then go on with my homework.

As a rule, I go to bed at about 11 o'clock or even later.

2. Now study some additional words and expressions in use when dwelling upon this topic.

to wake up – прокидатися

to do one's morning exercises – робити свою ранкову гімнастику

to put on one's slippers – одягати капці

to put on one's dressing gown – одягати халат

to take (have) a cold (hot) shower – приймати холодний (гарячий) душ

to comb one's hair – розчісувати волосся

to wash one's face and hands with a soap – мити своє обличчя і руки з милом

to clean one's teeth with a toothpaste – чистити свої зуби зубною пастою

to dress, to put on smth. – одягатися

to make a bed – застилати постіль

to have breakfast (lunch, dinner, supper) – снідати (мати ланч, обідати, вечеряти)

to leave for school – йти до школи

to take a bus – сідати на автобус

to take a taxi – взяти таксі

to walk, to go on foot – йти пішки

to finish one's work – закінчити роботу

to have a break – мати перерву

to come home – прийти додому

to rest – відпочивати

to have a rest – (трохи) відпочити

to watch TV – дивитися телевізор

to listen to the music – слухати музику

to be short of time (to be pressed for time) – бути обмеженим у часі

to be late for – запізнюватися на

to have a practice in – тренуватися, практикуватися

to play the piano (the guitar, the violin) – грати на піаніно (гитарі, скрипці)

to have a good time – добре провести час

to fall asleep – засинати

3. Answer in writing the following questions:

What are your duties about the house?
How do you help your parents about the house?
Is it difficult for you to get up early?
Does your mother get up earlier than you? Why?
What do you do when you get up?
How much time does it take you to get to school?
When does your school begin?
How long does it last?
What do you usually do in the evenings?

4. Dwell upon the topic “My working day”.

Topic 5. My Day Off.

1. Read the text. Try to translate it using the words given below:

lucky – щасливчик
early riser – людина, що встає рано
to enjoy – насолоджуватися
to hurry – поспішати
tasty – смачний
pie – пиріг
gloomy – похмурий
relative – родич
take a nap – трохи поспати
exhibition – виставка
nasty – неприємний
to gain – придбати

I go to the University five days a week, so I have two days off – Saturday and Sunday. During the week I am very busy, so I like to have a rest on weekend.

I am not an early riser and it is a rare Saturday or Sunday when I get up before 9 o'clock. I enjoy staying in bed, when I don't have to hurry anywhere. We have late breakfast at 10 and watch TV.

Usually we have something tasty: meat salad, fried potatoes, chicken, cake or pie. If the weather is fine, I usually do not stay indoors, I and my dog go outside. Often we go to the park and play there. If the weather is rainy and gloomy, I stay at home and watch TV, listen to the music, read, the books.

In the evenings I like to watch video and music programs. There is a big armchair in my room right beside the lamp with blue shade. If it is cold I like to sit there with cup of coffee and read.

So when we have time for leisure, we usually need something that can interest and amuse us. There are several ways to do this. In big cities it's often difficult to decide where to go in the evening.

If we want to go out there are a lot of theatres, cinemas and clubs in our country where we can spend our free time. (But in small towns and villages they have no actors of their own. So they invite a group of actors from a big town to show plays.)

People who are fond of music join a musical section where they are taught to play different instruments. Those who like to dance join a dancing section.

People who are interested in sports can join sport sections such as tennis, basketball, chess and others. And, of course, all the people use radio or television. They switch on the radio set or TV set and choose the programme they like best of all. People who are interested in sports listen to or watch football and basketball matches. Everyone likes to see skating and dancing on the ice.

Some people like music. They listen to concerts of modern and old music, new and old songs and see dances. Television helps us to "visit" different lands, see fish and insects, lakes, rivers and seas. We are shown different countries, cities and people who live there. On TV people could even see both sides of the Moon.

I like weekends very much, because I can rest and gain some energy for the next week.

2. Now study some additional words and expressions in use when dwelling upon this topic.

to envy – заздрити

to guess – вгадати

I didn't have to hurry – мені не треба було поспішати

an early riser – людина, що рано встає

to wash oneself – вмиватися

to lay the table – накривати на стіл

favourite – улюблений

to go skating and skiing – кататися на ковзанах та лижах

to happen – траплятися

to speak over the phone – розмовляти по телефону

boring – нудний

to feel sorry for smb. – жаліти когось

to feel – відчувати

TV-addicts – "телемани"; люди, які витрачають багато часу перед телевізором

to play a game of chess – грати в шахи

to argue – стверджувати

leisure – дозвілля

to switch on – включати

insect – комаха

to extend – розгорнути

3. Answer in writing the following questions:

How many day offs do you have?

When do you get up on Sunday?

Do you spend a lot of time with your friends?

Do you watch TV a lot?
What time do you go to bed?
Do you like weekends?
How do you spend your leisure?
Do you have a lot of time for leisure?
Do you like to spend your leisure outdoors or at home?
Is it difficult to decide where to go out in evening in big cities?
What other ways in which leisure time can be spent do you know?

4. Dwell upon the topic “My day off”.

Topic 6. My English lesson.

1. Read the text. Try to translate it using the words given below:

evident – очевидно

truly global language – по-справжньому глобальна мова

all over the world – по всьому світу

to use – використовувати

periodicals – періодичні видання

commerce – комерція

technology – техніка

to pronounce – вимовляти

to invite – запрошувати

I'd like to tell you about my English studies. Today it is quite evident that everyone should know at least one foreign language. English has become the language of the planet, the first truly global language. More than 750 million people all over the world use it. More than half of the world's periodicals and eighty per cent of the information in the world's computers are also in English. English is the main language of business, commerce, technology, sport, pop music.

Our group has two English lessons a week: on Tuesday and Friday. When the teacher comes and opens the door, we come in and sit down. Then we open our bags and take our exercise-books and text-books.

And soon the lesson begins... We usually start it by pronouncing different words and sounds. Then we are usually invited to the blackboard by the teacher. After that we usually do some exercises from the text-book. These exercises teach us to ask questions, or how to make negative sentences and so on. Then, using tests in our exercise-books, we usually write spelling, two tests and a quiz. During the lesson we speak mostly English, but sometimes, when the students don't understand the teacher or the task in the text-book, we start speaking Ukrainian.

What I like best of all in our English lessons is the merry, friendly atmosphere in the class. The funny jokes are always greeted.

To the end of the lesson the teacher always gives us a huge homework. It usually consists of learning new words or a text by heart and making several exercises in a

writing form. Then we all say good-bye to our teacher and begin preparing to the new lesson.

2. Now study some additional words and expressions in use when dwelling upon this topic.

broadens your horizons- розширювати свій кругозір, надавати можливості

useful – корисний

to communicate – спілкуватися

to surf the Internet – користуватися інтернетом

necessary – необхідний

feature – риса, функція

fluently – вільно

efforts – зусилля

the ABC- алфавіт

transcription – транскрипція

sounds – звуки

letters – букви

to describe – описувати

grammar structures – граматичні конструкції

conversational phrases- розмовні фрази

to recite poems – розказувати вірші

compositions – твори

essays – есе

to make reports on different topics – робити повідомлення (доповіді) з різними темами

to discuss – обговорювати

successfully – успішно

on one hand and on the other hand – з одного боку та з іншого боку

I can't stand ... – я не переношу

3. Answer in writing the following questions:

How many times a week do you have your English lessons?

How do you greet your teacher?

Do you use the blackboard during the lesson?

What is your favorite activity at the lesson?

How many exercise-books do you use?

Do you play any scenes or make dialogues at the lesson?

How often do you write tests?

Is the university lesson different from the school one?

What do you like most in your English lessons?

Does a student stand up to give the answer?

How does the teacher correct your mistakes?

Is the lesson interesting for you in general?

4. Dwell upon the topic “My English lesson”.

Topic 7. My English teacher.

1. Read the text. Try to translate it using the words given below:

to be grateful – бути вдячним

to convince – переконувати

to have a good command – добре володіти

to put into practice – застосовувати на практиці

to mock at – насміхатися

to do one's best – старатися

attitude – ставлення

English is very important nowadays, that is why it is very important to have a good teacher. I am very grateful to my English teacher who makes me interested in this subject. She is the person I love best at the University because our English lessons are very interesting and instructive.

We begin to study English in the first course. So she is the first who gave us the knowledge that English is an international language, it is the language of business, diplomacy and international relations, the language of progressive science and engineering. She convinced us that it is absolutely necessary for every educated person, for every good specialist to know English well today.

Our teacher is very competent and a good professional. She has a good command of the English language. From lesson to lesson we improve our knowledge, learn more and more new words, grammatical structures and put them into practice of speaking.

We are lucky enough to have such a patient and tactful teacher. She never mocks at the students if they say or do something wrong. She patiently corrects our mistakes and explains us everything we can't understand.

Our teacher does her best to make our lessons interesting and entertaining. We work with video in the class, watch English video films and then have a discussion. We get acquainted with English or American writers reading their works in the original. We listen to pop songs and try to understand the words.

She always looks perfect and we never see her face angry or unfriendly. We feel that she loves us and this is very important in teacher's work.

Teachers do not only teach their subjects. They develop their pupils' intellect, their attitudes to life and to other people. With the help of my teacher I learn a lot. Knowledge of foreign languages opens many doors before you, gives you many opportunities and advantages.

2. Now study some additional words and expressions in use when dwelling upon this topic.

obvious – очевидний

stylistic variation – стилістичний варіант

to reflect – відображати
notwithstanding – незважаючи
local dialects – місцеві діалекти
minor peculiarities – незначні відмінності
sound system – звукова система
substantially – в основному, у більшості випадків
acceptable – прийнятні
to practise – практикувати, вправлятися, тренуватися
to arise – виникати, з'являтися
instantly – миттєво
to acquire – придбати
to require – вимагати
pattern – зразок, штамп, система, структура, модель
to afford – дозволити себе
to waste – втрачати, тратити марно (напр., час)

3. Answer in writing the following questions:

What is your English teacher's name?

What is her appearance?

What did she do to make the lessons interesting and entertaining?

Who convinced you that it is absolutely necessary to know English well today?

What did you do at the lessons?

What do the teachers develop in their pupils?

Why is it important to know English?

4. Dwell upon the topic “My English teacher”.

Stage 2

Topic 8. My native city.

1. Read the text. Try to translate it using the words given below:

city – місто

town – невелике містечко

suburb – передмістя

street – вулиця

square – площа

building – будівля

bus – автобус

trolleybus – тролейбус

tram – трамвай

metro – метро

car – автомобіль

taxi – таксі

truck – вантажівка
conductor – кондуктор
ticket – квиток
hotel – готель
police – поліція
hospital – лікарня
church – церква
market – ринок
restaurant – ресторан
cafe – кафе
park – парк
zoo – зоопарк
circus – цирк
theatre -театр
cinema – кінотеатр
museum – музей
picture gallery – картинна галерея
shop – магазин
department store – універмаг
supermarket – супермаркет

Odessa is the Black Sea gateway to Ukraine. It is the country's largest commercial Black Sea port and a large industrial city.

Odessa is a crossroads of cultures, languages and trade. Pushkin lived here in exile during the 1820s, and also it was home to writer and film director Alexander Dovzhenko.

The site of Odessa was controlled from 1526 to 1789 by the Ottoman Turks. In the 18th century Russia took this region and constructed a new port at Odessa. It was named after the ancient Greek colony Odessos. By the 1880s it was the second biggest Russian port and an important industrial city. Odessa was a hotbed of the 1905 revolution.

The beauty of Odessa is in Prymorsky boulevard with its beautiful buildings and the Potemkin Steps. Film director Eisenstein used Potemkin Steps in his film "Battleship Potemkin". The 193 steps, built between 1827 and 1841, descend from the statue of Duc de Richelieu. At the eastern end of Prymorsky boulevard Pushkin statue and a British cannon from the Crimean War stand in front of the Odessa City Hall.

Several of the city's fine museums are the Museum of Maritime History, the Literature Museum, the Pushkin Museum, the Museum of Western and Oriental Art and others. The Archaeology Museum is the first museum of this kind in the former Russian Empire. Its Gold Room has jewellery and coins from early Black Sea civilizations, including the first Slavic coins of St Volodymyr with the trident symbol on them.

Odessa is famous for its beaches. The southern beaches are less crowded and more picturesque than the northern ones. The Arkadia area is the most popular and has lots of restaurants and activities.

2. Now study some additional words and expressions in use when dwelling upon this topic.

goods – речі, продукти
demand – попит
supply – пропозиція
price – ціна
cash-desk – каса
service centre – сервісний центр
barber's – чоловіча перукарня
hairdresser's – жіноча перукарня
dry cleaning – хімчистка
laundry – пральня
shoe repair – ремонт взуття
reservation – бронювання
room – номер
single – одномісний номер
double – двомісний номер
passport – паспорт
form – формуляр, бланк
receptionist – адміністратор (готелю)
left luggage – камери схову
chambermaid – покоївка

3. Answer in writing the following questions:

Where is Odessa situated?
How old is the city?
What is the population of Odessa?
Is Odessa your native city?
Can you name some significant differences from other Ukrainian cities?
Can you name several places of interest?
Can you tell some facts from the history of Odessa?
Can you name some famous culture figures from Odessa or living in Odessa?
What is your favourite place in Odessa?
Is beach a big part of Odessa life?
Where is the most popular area for young people in Odessa?

4. Dwell upon the topic "My native city".

Topic 9. The Capital of Ukraine – Kiev.

1. Read the text. Try to translate it using the words given below:

capital – столиця

to found – засновувати

located – розташовані

ancient – древні

official residence – офіційна резиденція

wealth – багатство

luxury – розкіш

Kiev is the capital of Ukraine. More than three million people live there. Kiev was founded more than 1500 years ago, so it's an ancient city. It is the political, economic, industrial and cultural centre of our country. There are many factories in Kiev. They make different products. There are many museums, monuments, theatres, cinemas, libraries and palaces in Kiev. Thousands of students study at Kiev-Mohila academy, at Kiev University and many other institutes and colleges.

Kiev is situated on the banks of the river Dnieper. The city is very green. It is one of the most beautiful cities of Ukraine. Ukrainian Verkhovna Rada and the official residence of our president and government are located in Kiev. Ambassadors of many countries live in the capital of Ukraine too.

Kiev is a large transport centre. Kiev metro is very beautiful.

Khreschatyk is the main street in Kiev. It is not very long, but it is wide and straight. You can see many cars and trolleybuses in Khreschatyk. There are many big green trees in it. A lot of people go to Khreschatyk every day. Some of them go shopping because there are many good shops and big market there. We can see the shop windows full of luxury. Other people go to the cinema, look at the fountains or sit on the benches. In the evening many people walk in Khreschatyk. There you can see many bright lights. People like the main street of Kiev because it is nice and green.

We are proud that our capital is one of the best and oldest cities in the world.

2. Now study some additional words and expressions in use when dwelling upon this topic.

numerous – числений

striking – вражаючий

fortress – фортеця

royal – королівський

outstanding – видатний

statesman – державний діяч

to bury – хоронити

tower – вежа

in memory of – на згадку про

to contain – містять

priceless – безцінний

extensive – широкий

recorded history – писемна історія

3. Answer in writing the following questions:

Where is Kiev situated?

What is the population of Kiev?

How old is the city?

Describe the main street of Kiev?

What is most popular kind of transport in Kiev?

Is Kiev the cultural and industrial centre of Ukraine?

Why Kiev is so attractive for students?

4. Dwell upon the topic “The capital of Ukraine”.

Topic 10. Ukraine.

1. Read the text. Try to translate it using the words given below:

national emblem – герб

anthem – гімн

independence – незалежність

to be proclaimed – бути проголошеним

currency – валюта

to be adopted – бути прийнятим

to border – межувати

flat – рівнинний

due to – завдяки

crops – сільськогосподарські культури

mineral deposits – мінеральні запаси

hard-working – працьовитий

Ukraine is a rich farming, industrial and mining region in south-eastern Europe. It is an independent democratic state. Its population is about 52 mln people. The capital of Ukraine is Kiev.

Ukraine have its own-armed forces, and maintain its own diplomatic relations with foreign countries. Ukraine covers about 603.700 sq. km being larger than any country in Western Europe. From east to west Ukraine stretches for more than 1300 km and from north to south for almost 900 km.

It borders with Belarus and Russia on the north and on the east. In the south it is bounded by the Black Sea and the Sea of Azov. In the west Ukraine is bounded by Moldova, Rumania, Hungary, Slovakia and Poland. Ukraine is in ideal geographical position for the development of its resources, lying between 440 and 520 latitude north, on the same latitude as the USA, Britain.

The climate is mild and warm, with a long summer and a short winter. Together with its fertile black soil, this makes it ideal for the development of intensive agriculture.

The main part of Ukraine is located in the watershed of the Dnieper-River, which divides Ukraine into two parts: Right-Bank and Left-Bank Ukraine. Ukraine's proximity to the Black Sea and the presence of large navigable rivers running through its territory has promoted the development of trade and culture. The Black Sea is not only a means of communication with Transcaucasia and Turkey but also with the rest of the world through the Mediterranean Sea. Ukraine also lies on the Danube, and this gives it access to European countries. Through the Siversky Donets it has access to the Don.

The territory of Ukraine is criss-crossed by railroads and highways, oil and gas pipelines and high-voltage transmission lines – all of which ensure close economic ties with Eastern and Western Europe. Ukraine is a highly industrialised country, whose economic potential is great. Ukraine is a country with the glorious past. It is rich in historical monuments and different places of interest. Kyiv is the capital of Ukraine and one of the oldest cities in the Eastern Europe. It has already celebrated its 1500th anniversary. That's why it is not surprising that a lot of interesting monuments are situated there, for example, the well-known to all Slavonic world St Sophia's Cathedral and Kyivo-Pecherska Lavra. It is breathtaking to wander along the streets of the old town, to feel the breath of history.

But Ukrainian places of interest are situated not only in Kyiv. Near the small town of Kanev the monument to the Ukrainian national genius Taras Shevchenko is situated. The museum, where the books, drawings and manuscripts of Shevchenko are kept, is situated in the village not far from Kanev. Even the house, where he was born, is preserved. It is very interesting to look at it. One may come to Poltava and visit the museum of the famous Poltava battle, the field where Peter the Great defeated the Swedes.

One may also go to Zaporizhia, to the island of Khortytsia, where the Ukrainian Cossacks' organization was born. One can go to Odessa and walk along the boulevards, where Pushkin walked a long time ago, and one can touch the trees, which Pushkin touched. It is also possible to visit the last house of Chekhov (now the museum in Yalta), where Chekhov lived, and where he wrote his last works, and where he died. One may visit the famous symbol of the Crimea – the castle "Swallow's Nest" or the residence of Russian tsars.

It is possible to go through Gogol places in the Poltava Region and see Dickanka, Sorochintsy. One can continue this list, because there is also Western Ukraine with the Carpathians and their legends, feudal lords' castles and cathedrals, with their unique culture and nature. There are a lot of places to see in Ukraine and to be proud of. And I am glad to live in such a country, with all those beautiful monuments.

2. Now study some additional words and expressions in use when dwelling upon this topic.

to make strides – робити успіхи

tremendous – величезний

to cease – припиняти

elections – вибори
to introduce– запроваджувати; вводити
celebration– святкування
to replace– замінити
fixed rate – фіксований курс
legal tender– законний платіжний засіб
bill– банкнот
coin– монета
currency– валюта
authorized bank – уповноважений банк
safety– безпека, цілість

3. Answer in writing the following questions:

Where is Ukraine situated?
What is population of Ukraine?
What parts is Ukraine divided into?
Can you describe the climate of Ukraine?
Can you name the largest cities in Ukraine?
Can you tell some significant facts from the history of Ukraine?
Why is Ukraine so attractive for foreign tourists?

4. Dwell upon the topic “Ukraine”.

Topic 11. The Ukrainian character in comparison with the other nations.

1. Read the text. Try to translate it using the words given below:

kindness – доброта
hospitality – гостинність
friendliness – дружелюбність
deceased – покійний, мертвий
sense of humor – почуття гумору
craftsman – майстер, ремісник
mastery– майстерність, мистецтво

A nation is a group of people who share common history and usually a language and usually, but not always, live in the same area. Culture can be described as our everyday life: how we communicate, what makes us happy and said. It also includes our language, religion, traditions, behavior, way of life – in other words, what we do each day. People that belong to various nations may differ and they always differ from one another.

For example, the Germans are regarded as scientifically-minded and industrious, they're always considered solid, intelligent and mathematical. And, for instance, Israeli are believed to be mercenary, industrious, shrewd, loyal to family, religious. There is a big amount of examples we can list about national character of

different people. Proving the difference of the national stereotypes I want to compare Ukrainian and English nations. There are a lot of features that vary. The Ukrainians are industrious, tough, brave, progressive and suspicious. They are always considered to be nationalistic, over – patriotic (because of this reason they're good soldiers), we are willing to respect opinion of other people.

Speaking about Englishmen I may note that they're reserved, tradition-loving, courteous, honest, extremely nationalistic and etc. To my mind, they have a specific sense of humor. They say that they can't understand our jokes and anecdotes not only because of the different meanings of the words, but because of their humor is more delicate. Looking at these features of the Ukrainians and the Englishmen it is not hard to mark out the differences. The Englishmen are reserved, but the Ukrainians are open-hearted and communicative. The Englishmen are tradition-loving and the Ukrainians, to my mind, don't keep their traditions in such a degree. There is a great majority of factors that influence the nations stereotype and its people's character. People that live in the southern countries have less problems than those who live in the North and because of this they're more cheerful and artistic. The history also has a great influence on the national character. The peoples in Asia are revengeful because their forefathers often were at war with others. In Africa many countries were colonies of the Great Britain, Holland, Spain and so on and they (Africans) were the slaves and because of this they're still hard-working and industrious. The National Character exists. It is not a myth, it's a reality. But the National Character doesn't describe the character of every person; it describes the character of people of nation in general. Every person has its own character, but according to the person's belonging to some nation many traits of character are similar and these features may be explained as the national character.

Ukrainians have a sense of humor, they are musical, artistic. They are wonderful craftsmen famous for their mastery in weaving, wood-carving, and ceramics.

But skill and diligence in working the land is perhaps the greatest talent the Ukrainians possess.

Life depended on the rhythms of cultivating the soil. Holidays were celebrated during periods of transition from one type of agricultural activity to another.

Easter, for example, is a spring holiday. Spring is a time of ploughing and sowing in the fields, a time of warmth and awakening after a cold, hungry winter. In pagan times Ukrainians believed that the gods died and were reborn every year. An example of pagan customs is the dyeing of eggs.

To the Christian Ascension Day (the 40th day after Easter) Ukrainians added a pre-Christian tradition of going to the field to inspect the progress of the wheat.

The Trinity is celebrated in summer, on the 50th day after Easter. Traditionally people decorate their homes with green tree branches and fragrant herbs.

Another summer holiday is Ivan Kupala's Day on July 7. During the day everyone has to be at least immersed in water. This was the last holiday before the harvest.

August 2, St. I Ilia's Day, marked the beginning of autumn. "Until dinner it's summer, after dinner it's autumn", people said. On the 19th of August, or on "Saviour Day", vegetables, fruit, mushrooms, and honey were blessed.

Weddings usually took place in the middle of October.

A unique feature of Ukrainian Christmas festivities is the "vertep", or puppet theatre". Young people get together, dress as angels, kings, Herod, Satan, Death, and even animals. They walk from house to house singing about the birth of Christ, greeting everyone with the holiday.

2. Now study some additional words and expressions in use when dwelling upon this topic.

wood-carving – різьблення по дереву

skill – майстерність, уміння

diligence – старанність, ретельність

to plough – орати

to sow – сіяти

pagan – язичеський, язичницький

fragrant – ароматний, духмяний

3. Answer in writing the following questions:

What are the traits of the Ukrainian character?

What is the greatest talent the Ukrainians possess?

What are the spring holidays?

What summer holidays do you know?

What is a unique feature of Ukrainian Christmas festivities?

What holiday do you like best of all?

4. Dwell upon the topic "Ukrainian character in comparison with the other nations".

Topic 12. Qualities of a real teacher of foreign languages.

1. Read the text. Try to translate it using the words given below:

a key element – ключовий елемент

a lack – пробіл, пропуск

tolerance – толерантність

patience – терпіння

relationship – відносини

to measure – міряти

to possess – володіти

to maintain – підтримувати

requirements – вимоги

expectations – очікування

When you leave school you understand that the time to choose your future profession has come. It's not an easy task to make the right choice of a job. I have known for a long time that leaving school is the beginning of my independent life, the beginning of a far more serious examination of my abilities and character.

I'd like to be a teacher. I know that it's very difficult to become a good teacher. You should know perfectly the subject you teach, you must be well-educated and well-informed. An ignorant teacher teaches ignorance, a fearful teacher teaches fear, a bored teacher teaches boredom. But a good teacher develops in his pupils the burning desire to knowledge. As John Steinbeck once said, a great teacher is a great artist and you know how few great artists there are in the world. Teaching might even be the greatest of the arts. It's a great responsibility to bring up children. I think that's the reason why teachers are deeply respected.

More and more people realize that every educated person should know a foreign language. That's why I'm going to become an English teacher. Teachers are a key element in learning English. Their influence plays a fundamental role in a students' progress, or a lack thereof. To make their students leap great heights and excel in their subjects, students must adhere to certain credentials.

The factors like classroom atmosphere, student- teacher relationship, tolerance, patience, passion and other aspects, should be taken diligently. For English teachers, being good at the language is not the only thing to measure their efficiency, they should possess phenomenal teaching techniques as well. These techniques include specific teaching behavior and the handling of students' diverse temperaments. Adding to this, it is important to maintain an appreciable rapport between the teacher and the student.

Designing an effective plan is also a key to success. Keeping in mind the students' requirements and expectations from a particular course, its particulars' should be designed. Whether a student needs attention in vocabulary, grammar or tenses, a good teacher is the one who can crack the hardest nut, and help her students overcome any difficulty he/she is facing.

I always remember these famous words and I'm going to teach them to my pupils: «He, who doesn't know a foreign language, doesn't know his own language».

The complexity of English as a second language needs a qualified teacher and an appropriate classroom environment. Overall it can be said a good teacher is at the root of the success of a student.

2. Now study some additional words and expressions in use when dwelling upon this topic.

to change one's mind – змінити думку

to make up one's mind – вирішити

to suit – підходити

noble – шляхетний

prudent – розсудливий

trait – риса характеру

ignorant – неосвідчений

burning desire – велике бажання
to bring up – виховувати
reason – причина
to respect – поважати
to realize – бути в курсі, розуміти

3. Answer in writing the following questions:

Have you definitely made up your mind what to be in the future?
When did you begin making plans for the future?
When were you able to give a definite answer about your future profession?
Did anybody help you to make the choice?
Are you going to work and study at the same time?
Why do you think teaching is a noble profession?
What traits must a good teacher have?
What difficulties of teaching profession can you name?
What did Steinbeck say about teaching profession ?

4. Dwell upon the topic “The qualities of a real teacher of foreign languages”.

Topic 13. Learning languages. English is a language that conquered the world.

1. Read the text. Try to translate it using the words given below:

foreign – іноземний
necessary – необхідний
nowadays – в наші дні
growing – зростаючий
reasons – причини
to be able – мати можливість, вміти
to communicate – спілкуватися, розмовляти
branch of science – галузь науки

Foreign languages are absolutely necessary for people nowadays, because of our growing international contacts with foreign countries.

There are many reasons, why we begin to study foreign languages. One studies a foreign language to be able to communicate with other people who speak this language, other study it for future career.

If we are planning to travel to countries where the language we can speak is spoken, we can communicate with people there and understand what they are saying to us.

If we are working in any branch of science, we naturally wish to read scientific books and magazines in other languages to raise our professional level. Making business nowadays also means the ability of speaking foreign languages.

The ability of speaking one or two or even more foreign languages helps people from different countries to develop mutual friendship and understanding. We can

also make our intellectual and cultural horizons wider through contacts with people of another culture.

It is also very interesting to read foreign literature in its original form. We can also read foreign newspapers and magazines and understand films in foreign languages without any help and translation.

As for me I learn English, because English is a very popular language all over the world. It is used in many parts of the world and there is a lot of business correspondence and literature in English.

Also I am going to learn Spanish, because it is also a widely spread language.

I think, it is very important to speak at least one foreign language either English or German or French and Spanish or any other one.

There is a saying: the more languages you speak, the more times you are a human being.

2. Now study some additional words and expressions in use when dwelling upon this topic.

to raise smb's professional level – підняти свій професійний рівень

mutual – взаємний

horizon – горизонт

wider – ширше

through – через

in the original – в оригіналі

compulsory – обов'язковий

secondary school – середня школа

higher school – вища школа

correspondence – листування, (by...) заочна форма навчання

at least – останньою мірою

3. Answer in writing the following questions:

What language do you learn?

How long have you been learning it?

Do you enjoy it? Why?

How do you learn new vocabulary?

What do you think are the best ways of learning it?

Are foreign languages necessary for people nowadays?

Why do we begin to study foreign languages?

What else language am I going to learn?

4. Dwell upon the topic "English is a world language".

Topic 14. Seasons. Planning holidays.

1. Read the text. Try to translate it using the words given below:

to be divided into – ділитися на

mild – м'який

to awake (past awoke, p.p. awaked) – прокидатися
hot – жаркий
to sunbathe – загорати, приймати сонячні ванни
to have a rest – відпочивати
to get hot – нагріватися
wonderful – прекрасний, чудовий
to guess – вважати
wind – вітер
sunsets – заходи сонця
cool – прохолодний
brochure- брошура
as well as – як і
range – ряд, галузь
involve – залучати, впливати
climbing – скалолазання
accommodation- житло

The year is divided into four seasons: winter, spring, summer, and autumn. Each season has its good and bad sides.

The weather in spring is generally mild but sometimes the days are really cold, especially in the beginning of the season. It is the time when everything awakes from its winter sleep.

Summer is the hottest season. It's time for holidays. People go to the seaside to sunbathe, to swim or to have a rest. In our country it usually gets hot in the end of June and July. Summer nights are short, but wonderful, the days are long.

Talking about autumn, I guess it isn't as nice as summertime. It's a season of winds and beautiful sunsets. The weather gets cooler and cooler. The leaves turn yellow and reddish and fall down to the ground and the birds migrate to warm countries.

A spell of sunny weather in September is called Indian summer or « Golden Autumn», In the end of November it sometimes snows. Though some people like autumn, because it is full of colours, but to my thinking it's a dull and rainy season.

Winter is the coldest time of the year. It is time of snow and frost. In winter the temperature rarely can cross the point of ten or fifteen centigrade below freezing point in our country.

Many people take their main holiday in summer, and although some people choose a last-minute break, others plan their holiday months in advance.

The beginning of the year is a good time for people to start looking at holiday brochures. Tour operators (companies that organize holidays) as well as travel agents (the people that sell holidays) give lots of information about holiday destinations and types of holiday. Apart from the traditional two-week beach holiday, you can choose from a range of holidays: a cruise (holiday on a ship), an activity holiday (a holiday that involves walking, cycling, climbing or other sports), a city break (a weekend or a few days in a different city) and so on. A lot of

people choose a package holiday, where flights and accommodation are included in the price. But many people prefer an independent holiday, where they make their own travel arrangements.

If you travel independently, you will need to book your flights or train tickets. Unless you have an onward destination, you will probably book a return journey. Then you will need to make a reservation at a hotel, or another place to stay, such as a campsite (if you are camping in a tent), or a caravan site (if you are staying in a caravan), or a B&B (a bed and breakfast).

For all types of foreign holidays, it is essential that you check you have all your travel documents. Make sure your passport hasn't expired, and that you have a visa if necessary. If you are travelling to some countries, you also need to make sure that all your vaccinations (protection against illness) are up to date. For some countries you might need a vaccination against hepatitis, or yellow fever, for example.

As your departure date gets nearer, you can start to plan the details of your journey. Perhaps it will be a good idea to buy a guide book, or a phrase book, if you don't speak much of the local language. Some people like to read up on (- get lots of background information) on where they are going, and find out about the places of interest and "must-see" sights. It's also fun to make a packing list, so you don't forget any vital clothes or toiletries.

It's also a good idea to buy local currency in advance, if your flight gets in (- arrives) in the middle of the night, when no banks are open. Most airlines also advise you to take out (-get) travel insurance just in case your flight is delayed or cancelled, or if you get ill and need to be repatriated (sent back to your country).

Don't forget to make arrangements for your pets and your house while you're away. Put your dog into kennels (a dog hotel), and leave a key with your neighbour just in case! Hopefully your neighbour will keep an eye on your house while you're on holiday! Finally, get to the airport with plenty of time to spare. Nowadays it can take much longer to get through security and onto the plane. Have a nice trip and send your neighbour a postcard!

2. Now study some additional words and expressions in use when dwelling upon this topic.

to turn yellow – ставати жовтими

reddish–червонуватий

to fall (past fell, p.p. fallen) down to – падати на

to migrate – мігрувати, улітати

spell – короткий відрізок часу

Indian summer –Бабине літо

dull – похмурий

frost – мороз

rarely – рідко

to cross – перетинати

below freezing point – нижче нуля

to book – бронювати
camp- табір
tent- палатка
essential- природній
to expire-закінчуватися
necessary- необхідний
departure- від'їзд
in advance- заздалегідь
insurance- страхування
to delay- затримка
to cancel-скасовувати
to keep an eye on- наглядати

3. Answer in writing the following questions:

How many seasons do you know?
What is spring weather like?
Is it always hot in spring?
What weather do we have in summer?
How do we call a spell of good weather in September?
Do you like autumn?
What is the coldest season in the year?
What season is the most popular for taking holidays?
Is it preferable to plan holidays?
Who can help you with your holiday arrangements?
What kind of holiday can you choose?
What is essential for foreign holidays?
What can you use if you don't speak the local language?
What is necessary to do if you plan to take your pet with you?
Why is it so important to get to airport in advance?

4. Dwell upon the topic "Planning holidays".

Topic 15. Travelling.

1. Read the text. Try to translate it using the words given below:

surrounding – околиця, навколишнє середовище
routine –режим, заведені процедури
hence –так що
relaxation – відпочинок від роботи, перепочинок, зниження стресу, розваги
to be essential – бути необхідним
to restore – відшкодовувати
railway station – залізничний вокзал
airport – аеропорт
to board a train (ship, etc.) – сісти на потяг (корабль та ін.)

train – потяг
ship – корабль, судно, пароплав
plane – літак
to be on the safe side – про всякий випадок
to spare oneself the trouble of – безклопітно
to stand in the line – стояти у черзі
to make one's preparations – готуватися
to settle one's business – налагодити справи
on the eve – напередодні
to pack – складати речі, пакуватися
suitcase – валіза
departure – від'їзд, відправлення
waiting-room – зал очікування
to announce – повідомляти
passenger – пасажир
carriage – вагон
berth – місце (для лежання)
package – пакет, згорток
rack – сітка
destination – місце призначення; ціль (подорожі)
to be in a hurry – поспішати, квапитися
procedure – процедура
height – висота
for this reason – за цією причиною
to become home-sick – сумувати за домом
to feel like returning home – бажати повернутися додому

Modern life is impossible without travelling. True, we often get tired of the same surroundings and daily routine. Hence some relaxation is essential to restore our mental and physical resources. That is why the best place of relaxation, in my opinion, is the one where you have never been before. And it is by means of travelling that you get to that place.

To understand how true it is you've got to go to a railway station, a sea or a river port or an airport. There you are most likely to see hundreds of people hurrying to board a train, a ship or a plane.

To be on the safe side and to spare yourself the trouble of standing long hours in the line, you'd better book tickets in advance. All you have to do is to ring up the airport or the railway station booking office and they will send your ticket to your place. And, of course, before getting off you have to make your preparations. You should settle all your business and visit your friends and relatives. On the eve of your departure comes you call a taxi and go to the airport or the railway station.

For some time you stay in the waiting-room. If you are hungry you take some refreshments. In some time the loud speaker announces that the train or the plane is in and the passengers are invited to take their seats. If you travel by train you find

your carriage, enter the corridor and find your berth. It may be a lower berth, which is more convenient or an upper one. You put your suitcase into a special box under the lower seat. Then you arrange your smaller packages on the racks. In some the train starts off. Travelling by train is slower than by plane, but it has its advantages. You can see the country you are travelling through and enjoy the beautiful nature. It may be an express train or a passenger one. There is no doubt it's much more convenient to travel by an express train, because it does not stop at small stations and it takes you less time to get to your destination.

But if you are in a hurry and want to save your time you'd better travel by plane, because it is the fastest way of travelling. After the procedure of registration you board the plane at last. You sit down in comfortable armchair and in a few minutes you are already above the clouds. The land can be seen below between the clouds and it looks like a geographical map. After the plane gained its regular height the stewardess brings in some mineral water. You can sit and read a book or a magazine, look through the window to watch the passing clouds change their color from white to black.

Some people prefer to travel by ship when possible. A sea voyage is very enjoyable, indeed. But to my mind the best way of travelling is by car. The advantages of this way of spending your holiday are that you don't have to buy a ticket, you can stop wherever you wish, where there is something interesting to see. And for this reason travelling by car is popular for pleasure trips while people usually take a train or a plane when they are travelling on business.

When you get tired of relaxation, you become home-sick and feel like returning home. You realize that "East or West – home is best", as the saying goes.

2. Now study some additional words and expressions in use when dwelling upon this topic.

Travelling by Train. Подорож на поїзді.

a railway ticket, railroad ticket – залізничний квиток

one-way ticket, single ticket – квиток

в один кінець

return ticket – зворотній квиток

round trip ticket – квиток туди та назад

ticket machine – автомат з продажу квитків

reduced fare ticket – пільговий квиток

child's ticket – дитячий квиток

first class ticket – квиток першого класу

adult fare – вартість квитка для дорослого

child fare – вартість дитячого квитка

single fare – вартість одного квитка

to get in line for a ticket – займати чергу за квитком

to buy ticket in advance – придбати квиток заздалегідь

fare – плата за проїзд

carriage, car – вагон

smoking car – вагон для курців
luggage-van – вантажний вагон
car for non-smokers – вагон для тих, хто не палить
sleeping car – спальний вагон
dining-car, restaurant car – вагон-ресторан
cancellation – повернення квитка
train station, railroad station, railway station – вокзал (залізничний)
arrivals and departures board, time-table
board – дошка розкладу
train times – розклад руху потягів
ticket office – квиткова каса
compartment – купе
ticket collector – контролер
change of trains, transfer – пересадка
to change trains – робити пересадку
to go by train – їхати на потягу
to catch the train – встигнути на потяг
to miss the train – запізнитися на потяг
train schedule – розклад руху потягів
porter, red cap (am.) – носій
track – шлях, колія
fast train – швидкий потяг
slow train – звичайний поштово-пасажирський потяг
passenger train – пасажирський потяг
long distance train (a sleep train) – потяг далекого спрямування
local train – приміський потяг
through train – потяг прямого сполучення

Travelling by Plane. Подорож на літаку.

pilot – пілот
mechanic – борт-механік
cockpit – місце пілота в кабіні
stewardess, flight attendant – стюард (– еса)
call button – кнопка виклику стюарда
excess luggage – зайва вага
to pay for excess luggage – платити за зайву вагу
airline – воздушна лінія
to take-off – взлітати
altitude – висота
window seat – місце біля ілюмінатора
aisle seat – місце біля проходу
flight – політ
non-stop flight – безпосадочний політ
boarding – посадка (на літак)

landing – посадка, приземлення
unscheduled stop – вимушена посадка
boarding pass – посадковий талон
check-in – реєстрація пасажирів
check-in desk (counter) – стійка реєстрації
domestic flight – рейс на внутрішніх лініях
direct flight – прямий рейс
shuttle flight – рейс човника
seat belt – ремінь безпеки
to fasten a seat belt – застібнути ремінь безпеки
air sickness – воздушна хвороба
aircraft – авіація, літак
to circle over the airfield – кружляти над посадковим полем аеродрома
to taxi over the airfield – вирулювати на старт
scheduled flight – рейс за розкладом
delayed flight – рейс з затримкою

A Sea Voyage. Морська подорож.

quay – причал, набережна (для швартування суден)
to moor – пришвартовувати (ся), стати на якір
gangway – трап
deck – палуба
steward – стюард, дежурний по каютам
forward – носова частина судна
aft – кормова частина судна
amid ship – середина судна
harbor – порт, гавань
dock – причал
pitch – килева качка
roll – бортова качка
to be sea-sick – страждати від морської хвороби
to be a bad (good) sailor – погано (добре) переносити морські подорожі
to weigh anchor – відходити, сниматися з якоря
captain's bridge – капітанський мостик
steerage – закрита палуба
lounge – салон
captain – капітан (корабля)
mate – штурман, допомагаючий капітану
lighthouse – маяк
hold – трюм
liner – рейсовий пароплав
boat – лодка, пароплав
sailing ship – вітрильне судно
river steamer – річковий пароплав

cargo-ship – вантажний корабль
steamer – пароплав
life-boat – рятувальний човен
to change for a boat – пересісти в човен (пароплав)
anchor – якір
to cast the anchor – бросати якір
to raise the anchor – зніматися з якору
to be (to lie) at anchor – стояти на якорі
crew – команда корабля
cruise – подорож морем (заради відпочинку та розваг)
to take a cruise – здійснювати подорож морем

Luggage. Багаж.

a lot of (much) luggage – багато багажу
hand luggage – ручний багаж
heavy luggage – важкий багаж
a left-luggage office – камера схову
a luggage receipt – багажна квитанція
to leave one's luggage in the left-luggage office – залишити речі у камері схову
to deposit one's luggage – здати на зберігання багаж
to collect one's luggage – взяти багаж (з камери схову)
to register one's luggage – здати речі у багаж
to have one's luggage labeled – прикріпити ярлик
to have one's luggage checked – перевірити наявність міст, зміст багажа
luggage rack – сітка для багажа
luggage van – багажний вагон
Lost and Found – бюро знахідок
luggage claim check – багажна бірка

3. Answer in writing the following questions:

Why is modern life impossible without travelling?
What is the fastest and the most convenient way of travelling?
Why is travelling by sea very popular?
Why is travelling by car very convenient?
Where do you go every year?
Where do you make new friends?

4. Dwell upon the topic "Travelling".

Topic 16. Travelling abroad.

1. Read the text. Try to translate it using the words given below:

a custom's house – митниця

customs regulations – митні права
stipulate – обговорювати
be liable to duty – не підлягаючий митному збору
duty-free – вільний від оплати
exceed a fixed quota – перевищувати квоту
a prohibited articles list – список заборонених речей
a list of items – список речей
proper authorities – влада
fall under customs restrictions – входити до списку обмежень
import (export) license – ліцензія на ввезення (вивезення)

While travelling a tourist may find himself in different places where he must both observe certain rules and enjoy his rights. Let's begin with the Custom's house. Every country has its own customs regulations which stipulate what articles are liable to duty and what articles are duty-free. Sometimes the articles liable to duty may be allowed as duty-free if the traveller does not exceed a certain fixed quota. Customs restrictions also include a list of prohibited articles. This is a list of items that may not be brought into or taken out of a country.

If you need these thing badly you must have an official paper from proper authorities giving permission to take items, which fall under special customs restriction. This paper is known as an import or export license. A traveller is asked to declare such items. It means he must name the item, state its value and often particulars. The declaration is made either orally or in writing a special form. After paying a duty the traveller is given a receipt. As a rule personal belongings are duty-free. Sometimes a passenger's luggage is carefully gone through in order to prevent smuggling. The formalities at the custom's house usually take some time. Only after passing through the customs does one realize that his journey is drawing to an end or beginning.

2. Now study some additional words and expressions in use when dwelling upon this topic.

declare the items – декларувати свої речі
other particulars – інші деталі
a receipt – квитанція
personal belongings (effects) – особові речі
the luggage is done through – багаж проходить перевірку
prevent smuggling – не допускати контрабанди
the formalities – формальності
pass through customs – пройти митну перевірку
the journey is drawing to an end – подорож підходить до кінця

3. Answer in writing the following questions:

What are customs regulations?

What do you need to have if the thing you need is under custom restriction?

What is a declaration?
What has a traveller to know about the customs?
Are personal things liable to duty?
What does the luggage go through?
When can be a traveller sure that his journey is drawing to end?

4. Dwell upon the topic "Travelling abroad".

Stage 3.

Topic 17. The Geographical position of the United Kingdom of Great Britain & Northern Ireland.

1. Read the text. Try to translate it using the words given below:

a thistle – *бом.* Чортополох (тж. як емблема Шотландії)

china – фарфор, фарфорові вироби

crockery – посуд (глиняний, фансовий)

a daffodil – *бом.* жовтий нарцис (є національною емблемою валійців)

a fen – болото, багно; the fens болотиста місцевість у Кембриджширі и Линкольнширі

a hamlet – деревня, маленьке селище

Britain is very small compared with many other countries in the world, yet it is a surprisingly varied land in many different ways: the diversity of landscape in different parts of the country; a long history that is rich in great events, a varied cultural heritage; long-lived customs and traditions; a rich mixture of peoples who live in the country; the great cities of London, Edinburgh, Oxford and Stratford. All together they make the image of Britain fascinating and exiting. The UK is a constitutional monarchy: the head of the state is a king or a queen. In practice, the Sovereign reins, but doesn't rule: the UK is governed by the Government- a body of Ministers who are the leading members of the political party in power and who are responsible to Parliament. The present Sovereign is Queen Elisabeth II. The territory of Great Britain is small. Yet the country has a wide variety of scenery. Britain is divided into four parts: England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland. England is often subdivided into three parts: the South, the Midlands and the North.

The South. The landscape is varied. The climate is warmer than in the other areas. There are hundreds of miles of sea coast which vary from flat, sandy or stony beaches to high rocky cliffs. The mild and sunny climate makes the south coast popular with holiday-makers. Some coastal resorts are famous, Brighton among them.

The Midlands. The Midlands Region has much farming land, but this part of the country is better known as an industrial area, one of the England's most productive regions. Derby is an engineering centre. Rolls Royce makes aero engines and cars there. Birmingham, which is often called "the Big Heart of England", is the most

important city of the Midlands. It is the second largest city in the UK. It's famous for engineering, especially car production.

The North. The weather is considerably colder. There is almost always snow in winter. This is a region of great natural beauty although industry of some kind has existed here for hundreds of years. In parts of the North – in Yorkshire particularly – there are gentle wooded valleys and green pastures and excellent farming land. The national symbol of England is the red rose.

Wales is the most westerly part of mainland. It is the smallest land of the United Kingdom, but has considerable variety, from the picturesque mountains of the north to the mining and industrial areas of the south. The chief cities are Cardiff, Swansea and Newport. In 1955 Cardiff was declared the capital of Wales. Wales is a principality (a country ruled by a prince, or from which he takes his title). The title of 'Prince of Wales' is traditionally given by the British sovereign to his or her eldest son, who is heir to the throne. The national symbol of Wales is a leek or daffodil.

The ocean bounds *Scotland* on all sides except for its southern, sixty-mile-long border with England. Most of the country is within forty miles of salt water. On the west coast there are a lot of sea lochs and islands. Most of Scotland's 787 islands are off the northwest coast. The country may be divided into the Highlands and the Lowlands. However, not all of the Lowlands are really 'low'. The highest peak in the Highlands and in all Britain is Ben Nevis (4406 feet = 1343 m) with its head in cloud and snow towering above the little town of Fort William. The national symbol of Scotland is a thistle.

The landscape of *Northern Ireland* is gentle. It is green because it rains a lot. But the rain showers quickly change to sunshine – and back to rain again. The mountains roll down to the sea. Northern Ireland is a land of lakes, rivers and a varied sea coast. It is a great place for tourism.

Britain lives a complex modern life in which traditional values and love of the past side by side with a desire for change. Today's Britain has a reputation for scientific innovations, for business, commerce and trade. It plays an important role in the political life of the world. However, the end of the 20th century was a time of transition for Britain in which her past position in the world as a political and economic power is being challenged by other countries. The question for the future is to find a new role in the world for her.

2. Now study some additional words and expressions in use when dwelling upon this topic.

an heritage – спадщина; наслідок

a leek – цибуля -порей (тж. як національна емблема Уельса);

a loch – шотл. озеро, вузький морський залив

a pasture – пасовище, вигін

picturesque – 1) живописний; 2) кольоровий; 3) ярка, кольорова (про мову)

scenery – 1) краєвид; 2) декорація

surprisingly – дивно, надзвичайно; несподівано

3. Answer in writing the following questions:

What makes the image of Great Britain fascinating and exiting?

How many parts is the Great Britain divided in and what are they?

What are the main features of the South?

What are the main features of the Midlands?

What are the main features of the North?

What kind of country is Wales and what are the main features of its parts?

What kind of country is Scotland and what is it famous with?

What kind of country is the Northern Ireland?

4. Dwell upon the topic "The Geographical position of the United Kingdom of Great Britain & Northern Ireland".

Topic 18. Climate and Nature of Great Britain.

1. Read the text. Try to translate it using the words given below:

"It's raining cats and dogs" – (присл.) "Ллє як з відра"

an ash – бот. ясен; mountain ash, wild ash горобина

a beech – бук, букове дерево; буковий

a birch – береза

a blackbird – чорний дрізд

central heating – центральне опалення

a drought – 1) засуха; 2) уст. сухість; спрага

an elm – бот. в'яз, ільм

a forecast – передбачення; прогноз

a heather – вереск

CLIMATE

The climate in Great Britain is generally mild and temperate due to the influence of the Gulf Stream. The south-western winds carry the warmth and moisture into Britain. The climate in Britain is usually described as cool, temperate and humid.

British people say: "Other countries have a climate, in England we have weather."

The weather in Britain changes very quickly. One day may be fine and the next day may be wet. The morning may be warm and the evening may be cool. Therefore it is natural for the people to use the comparison "as changeable as the weather" of a person who often changes his mood or opinion about something. The weather is the favorite topic of conversation in Britain. When two Englishmen are introduced to each other, if they can't think of anything else to talk about, they talk about weather. When two people meet in the street they will often say something about weather as they pass, just to show their friendliness.

Every daily paper publishes a weather forecast. Both the radio and television give the weather forecast several times each day.

The English also say that they have three variants of weather: when it rains in the morning, when it rains in the afternoon or when it rains all day long. Sometimes it rains so heavily that they say "It's raining cats and dogs".

January and February are usually the coldest months, July and August the warmest. Still the wind may bring winter cold in spring or summer days. Sometimes it brings the whirlwinds or hurricanes. Droughts are rare.

So, we may say that the British climate has three main features: it is mild, humid and changeable. That means that it is never too hot or too cold. Winters are extremely mild. Snow may come but it melts quickly. In winter the cold is humid cold, not the dry one.

In the British homes there has been no central heating up till recently. The fireplaces are often used. But the coal is not used as it's very expensive. Britain has no good coal now and imports it itself. Many schools and universities have no central heating either, and the floors there are made of stone. The British bedroom is especially cold; sometimes electric blankets or hot water bottles are used.

VEGETATION AND WILDLIFE

Britain was originally a land of vast forests. Mainly oak and beech in the Lowlands and pine and birch in the Highlands, with great stretches of marshland and smaller areas of moors. In the course of time, much forest land was cleared and almost all Lowlands outside the industrial areas were put under cultivation. Today only about 6 per cent of the total land area remains wooded.

Extensive forests remain in eastern and northern Scotland and in south-eastern and western England. Oak, elm, ash, and beech are the commonest trees in England, while Scotland has much pine and birch. The Highlands with thin soil are largely moorland with heather and grasses. In the cultivated areas that make up most of Britain there are many wild flowers, flowering plants and grasses.

The fauna or animal life of Britain is much like that of north-western Europe, to which it was once joined. Many larger mammals such as bear, wolf have been hunted to extinction, others are now protected by law. There are many foxes. Otters are common along rivers and streams, and seals live along much of the coast. Hedgehogs, hares, rabbits, rats and mice are numerous. Deer live in some of the forests in the Highlands of Scotland and England.

Some 230 kinds of birds live in Britain, and another 200 are regular visitors, many are songbirds. The most numerous are blackbirds, sparrow and starling. *Robin Redbreast* is the national bird of Britain. The number of ducks, geese and other water fowl has diminished during recent years.

There are many threats to wildlife and ecological balance around the coast. The biggest threat to the coastline is pollution. More than 3.500 million tons of industrial waste is pumped into the North Sea every year. "We cannot continue to use our seas as a dustbin and expect our coastline to survive," says Greenpeace. Many other ecological problems may be caused by privatization of the coast. Many of the rivers are "biologically dead", i.e. unable to support fish and wildlife.

2. Now study some additional words and expressions in use when dwelling upon this topic.

a marshland – болотиста місцевість

a moor – 1) верескова пустеля; 2) мисливські місця

an oak – дуб; dyer's (или black) oak красильний дуб

an otter – видра

a pine – сосна

Robin Redbreast – зоол. малинівка

a seal – зоол. тюлень;

a starling – скворець

a stretch – протягненність, простір; stretch of open country – відкрита місцевість;

a whirlwind – вихор; смерч, ураган; attr. вихревий, ураганний

3. Answer in writing the following questions:

What does it mean when the English say: "Other countries have a climate, in England we have weather"?

What are the three main features of English climate? Why?

Is the wildlife of Great Britain diverse?

What is the situation with the ecology of Great Britain?

What can we do to protect the ecological system of the Earth?

4. Dwell upon the topic "Climate and Nature of Great Britain"

Topic 19. London – The Capital of Great Britain

1. Read the text. Try to translate it using the words given below:

a suburb – 1) передмістя; 2) pl передмістя, околиці

steady – 1) стійкий; міцний; 2) рівномірний, рівний; 3) постійний, незмінний, неухильний

Buckingham Palace – Палац Букингемський (головна королівська резиденція в Лондоні)

Palace of Westminster – Вестмінстерський палац

Trafalgar Square – Трафальгарська площа

a grief – горе, печаль; засмучення; біда

When we think of Paris, Rome, Madrid, Lisbon and other European capitals, we think of them as 'cities'. When we think of the whole of modern London, the capital city of England and the United Kingdom, that great area covering several hundred square kilometers, we do not think of it as 'a city'. Not even as a city and its suburbs. Modern London is not one city that has steadily become larger through the centuries; it is a number of cities, towns, and villages that have, during the past centuries, grown together to make one vast urban area.

London is situated upon both banks of the River Thames; it is the largest city in Britain and one of the largest in the world. Its population is about 7 million people.

London dominates the life of Britain. It is the chief port of the country and the most important commercial, manufacturing and cultural centre. There is little heavy industry in London, but there is a wide range of light industry in Greater London.

London consists of three parts: the City of London, the West End and the East End.

The City extends over an area of about 2.6 square kilometers in the heart of London. About half a million people work in the City but only less than 6000 live here. It is the financial centre of the UK with many banks, offices and Stock Exchange. But the City is also a market for goods of almost every kind, from all parts of the world.

The West End can be called the centre of Tendon. Here are the historical palaces as well as the famous parks. Hyde Park with its Speaker's Corner is also here. Among other parks are Kensington Gardens, St.James's Park. In the West End there is Buckingham Palace, which is the Queen's residence, and the Palace of Westminster which is the seat of Parliament.

The best-known streets here are Whitehall with important Government offices, Downing Street, the London residence of Prime Minister and the place where the Cabinet meets, Fleet Street where most newspapers have their offices, Harley Street where the highest paid doctors live, and some others.

Trafalgar Square is named so in commemoration of Nelson's great victory. In the middle stands the famous Nelson Column with the statue of Nelson 170 feet high so as to allow him a view of the sea. The column stands in the geographical centre of the city. It is one of the best open air platforms for public meetings and demonstrations.

One of the "musts" for the sightseer is the Houses of Parliament, facing the Thames, on one side, and Parliament Square and Westminster Abbey, on the other. The House of Commons sits to the side of the Clock Tower (Big Ben), the House of Lords – to the Victoria Tower side.

Westminster Abbey is the crowning and burial place of British monarchs. It has its world famed Poet's Corner with memorials to Chaucer, Shakespeare, Milton, the Bronte's sisters, Tennyson, Longfellow, Wordsworth, Burns, Dickens, Thackeray, Hardy, Kipling and other leading writers. Only a few however, are actually buried there.

Here too is that touching symbol of a nation's grief – The Grave of the Unknown Warrior.

The name "West End" can be associated with wealth, luxury, and goods of high quality. It is the area of the largest department stores, cinemas and hotels. There are about 40 theatres, several concert halls, many museums including the British Museum, and the best art galleries.

It is in the West End where the University of London is centered with Bloomsbury as London's student quarter.

The Port of London is to the east of the City. Today there are kilometers and kilometers of docks here, and the great industrial areas that depend upon shipping. This is the East End of London, unattractive in appearance, but very important to the country's commerce.

In recent times London has grown so large, that the Government has decided that it must spread no farther. It is now surrounded by a "green belt" – a belt of agricultural and wooded land on which new buildings may be put up only with the permission of the planning authorities.

2. Now study some additional words and expressions in use when dwelling upon this topic.

Greater London – *досл.* Великий Лондона; район Лондона і його передмістя
Westminster – Вестмінстер (частина Лондону де розміщено урядові та адміністративні установи)

the West End – Вест Енд (центральний район Лондона)

the East End – Іст Енд (промисловий район Лондона)

the City – Сіті (фінансово-комерческий район Лондона)

the Bank of England – Банк Англії

the Tower of London – Лондонський Тауер (фортеця-музей на північному березі р. Темзи)

Tower Bridge – Тауерський міст (через р. Темзу)

St. Paul's Cathedral [kə'θdrəl] – собор св. Павла

Westminster Abbey ['æbi] – Вестмінстерське абатство

the Poets* Corner – куточок поетів (місце поховання багатьох знаменитих поетів і письменників в Вестмінстерському абатстві)

the Houses of Parliament – Палати Парламенту

the Palace of Westminster (Westminster Palace) – Вестмінстерський Палац (будинок англійського парламенту)

Big Ben – Біг Бен (годинник на одній з веж Вестмінстерського палацу)

Downing Street – Даунінг-стріт (вулиця, де під номером 10 розташовується резиденція прем'єр-міністра)

Changing of the Guard [ga:d] – зміна караулу (біля Букингемського палацу)

busby – волохата гвардійська шапка

Trafalgar [trə'fælgə] Square – Трафальгарська площа

Nelson's Column ['kɒləm] – колона Нельсона (пам'ятник адміралу Нельсону на Трафальгарській площі)

the National Gallery – Національна галерея

Scotland Yard – Скотленд-Ярд (назва центрального офісу поліції і самої поліції)

Fleet Street – Фліт-стріт (1. Вулиця, на якій знаходяться редакції більшості провідних газет; 2. *Перен.* преса та світ журналістики)

Hyde Park – Гайд-парк

the Speaker's Corner – Куточок оратора (в Гайд-парке)

Kensington Gardens – Кенсінгтон Гарден (великий парк)

St. James's Park – Сент-Джеймс-парк (королевський парк)
Soho ['souhou] – Сохо (район Вест Енда, відомий своїми ресторанами, барами, ночними клубами)
Harley Street – Харлі-стріт (1. Вулиця, де знаходяться приймальні провідних приватних лікарів; 2. *Перен.* медики, медичний світ)
Regent Street – Ріджент-стріт (вулиця, центр торгівлі)
Charring Cross – Чарінг Кросс (вулиця, відома книжковими магазинами)
Oxford Street – Оксфорд-стріт (центральна вулиця бізнес світу Лондону)
the British Museum – Британський музей
the Tate Gallery – Тейт галерея
Covent Garden Opera House – Ковент Гарден (провідний оперний театр Лондону)
Madame Tussaud's [tə'sɔ:dz] / [tju:'səuz] / [tu'səuz] Museum – Музей мадам Тюссо (музей воскових фігур)
the Queen Victoria Theatre (Old Vic) – театр королеви Вікторії (Олд Вік)
Cleopatra's Needle – голка Клеопатри (обеліск на березі річки Темзи)

3. Answer in writing the following questions:

What parts London consists of ?

Is London only the capital of Great Britain?

What the name "West End" can be associated with?

What are the “musts” of London?

4. Dwell upon the topic “London – The Capital of Great Britain”

Topic 20. Traditions and holidays of the United Kingdom.

1. Read the text. Try to translate it using the words given below:

a coal – 1) (кам'яне) вугілля; 2) вуглинка

a gratitude – вдячність

a ghost – 1) привид, примара; дух; 2) тінь, легкий слід (що-л.);

a witch – чаклунка; відьма;

a lantern – ліхтар

a pumpkin – гарбуз (звичайний)

a turkey – індик; індичка

There are a number of holidays, which are celebrated in Great Britain every year.

One of them is, of course, New Year's Day on the first of January. It is not so popular in England as in our country, but it is rather popular in Scotland. On that day people usually visit their friends and there is a lot of dancing and eating. In Scotland people bring a piece of coal for good luck in the New Year.

The next holiday of the year is St. Valentine's Day. It is on the 14th of February. People buy or make Valentine cards and send them to the people they love.

In March there is Mother's Day. All the children, little or adult ones, come to their mothers on that day to express their love and gratitude.

In April there is Easter. At Easter children eat chocolate Easter eggs. Sometimes parents hide them in the house or in the garden and children have to look for them.

In June there is Father's Day. On Father's Day children give or send their fathers and grandfathers cards and presents.

On the 31st of October there is a Halloween. They say ghosts and witches come out on Halloween. People make lanterns out of pumpkins. Some people have Halloween parties and dress as witches and ghosts.

The 25th of December is Christmas Day. It is one of the people's favorite holidays. People put Christmas trees in their houses and decorate them. There are beautiful Christmas decorations in the streets. On Christmas Eve everybody puts the presents under the Christmas tree. People say that at night Father Christmas puts presents into the stockings which children usually hang on their beds. The traditional Christmas meal is roast turkey and Christmas pudding.

Many things that are always regarded as typically British were written long ago and are not representing "modern life".

In the 20th century a lot of immigrants came to the British Isles and now it is extremely incorrect to identify these stereotypes with all people living there. It is a multicultural society. But still there are many interesting peculiarities in the British culture.

Most British people live in towns and cities. But they have an idealized vision of the countryside. The countryside for them means peace and quiet, beauty, good health and no crime.

People in Britain are fond of gardening. They like to plant and grow different flowers.

The British have sentimental attitude to animals. They like to keep pets.

The British are the sport loving nation. Sport is a popular leisure activity. Football and rugby are very popular with British people. Over three million people participate in basketball in the UK.

Horse-racing, "the sport of Kings" is a very popular sport.

Polo is popular too. It was brought to Britain from India in the 19th century by the English soldiers.

Fishing (angling) is one of the most popular sports.

Traditionally, the favourite sports of the British upper class are hunting, shooting and fishing. The most widespread form of hunting is fox-hunting. This is a popular pastime among some members of the higher social classes and is a mark of their status.

Darts is a very popular pub game.

The word "pub" is short for "public house". Pubs are so popular in the UK that there are over 60,000 pubs there (53,000 in England and Wales, 5,200 in Scotland

and 1,600 in Northern Ireland). Pubs are an important part of British life. People talk, eat, drink, meet their friends and relax there.

The British is a nation of tea-drinkers. It is a stereotype which is out-of-date. Of course, they like it to be made in a certain distinctive way – strong and with milk, but more coffee than tea is bought in the country's shops.

Afternoon tea was always thought to be a very important tradition in the UK.

2. Now study some additional words and expressions in use when dwelling upon this topic.

angling – рибальство

pub (от public house) – паб, пивна

Dress down friday – вольна п'ятниця

bank holidays – офіційні свята у Великобританії

New Year's Day – Новий рік

Good Friday – П'ятниця до Великодня

Easter Monday – Понеділок після Великодня

May Day Bank Holiday – свято зустрічі весни

Spring Bank Holiday – день весняного свята (останній понеділок травня)

August Bank Holiday – літній день відпочинку (останній понеділок серпня)

Christmas ['kri:sməs] Day – Різдво (25 грудня)

Boxing Day – день різдвяних подарунків (26 грудня)

St. Valentine's Day – День Св. День Святого Валентина (14 лютого)

Shrove Tuesday (Pancake Day) – Страсний четвер (останній день до посту)

the fasting of Lent – Великий пост

Mother's Day – День матері (Четверта неділя Великого посту)

April Fool's Day – День сміху (1 квітня)

Father's Day – День батька (відзначається в червні)

Halloween [ˌhæləu'i:n] – Хеллоуїн (31 жовтня)

Guy Fawkes Night – ніч Гая Фокса (вечір 5 листопада, день розкриття "Порохової змови")

dummy – чучело

St. David's [deividz] Day – День Св. Давіда (Національний день Уельсу, 1 березня)

St. George's Day – День Св. Джорджа (Національний день Англії, 23 квітня)

St. Andrew's Day – День Св. Ендрю (Національний день Шотландії, 30 листопада)

St. Patrick's Day – День Св. Патріка (національне свято Ірландії, 17 березня)

3. Answer in writing the following questions:

What are the most well-known English holidays?

What do they do for Mother's Day in England?

What do they do for Halloween in England?

What do they do for Easter in England?

How do they celebrate Christmas?

4. Dwell upon the topic “Traditions and holidays of the United Kingdom”

Topic 21. Education in Great Britain.

1. Read the text. Try to translate it using the words given below:

compulsory – обов'язковий

free – безкоштовний

to attend – відвідувати

nursery school – дитячий садочок (державний)

letter – буква

to keep an eye on smb. – наглядати за кимось

primary school – молодша школа, початкова школа

infant school – школа для малюків, молодша школа

junior school – початкова школа (для дітей віком від 7 до 11 років)

to get acquainted – знайомитись

secondary education – середня освіта

to be divided into – ділитися на

Twelve million children attend about 40.000 schools in Britain. Education in Great Britain is compulsory and free for all children between the ages of 5 and 16. There are many children who attend a nursery school from the age of 3, but it is not compulsory. In nursery schools they learn some elementary things such as numbers, colours, and letters. Apart from that, babies play, have lunch and sleep there. Whatever they do, there is always someone keeping an eye on them.

Compulsory education begins at the age of 5 when children go to primary school. Primary education lasts for 6 years. It is divided into two periods: infant schools (pupils from 5 to 7 years old) and junior schools (pupils from 7 to 11 years old). In infant schools children don't have real classes. They mostly play and learn through playing. It is the time when children just get acquainted with the classroom, the blackboard, desks and the teacher. But when pupils are 7, real studying begins. They don't already play so much as they did it in infant school. Now they have real classes, when they sit at desks, read, write and answer the teacher's questions.

Compulsory secondary education begins when children are 11 or 12 and lasts for 5 years. Secondary school is traditionally divided into 5 forms: a form to each year. Children study English, Mathematics, Science, History, Art, Geography, Music, a Foreign language and have lessons of Physical training. Religious education is also provided. English, Mathematics and Science are called "core" subjects. At the age of 7, 11 and 14 pupils take examinations in the core subjects.

There are 3 types of state secondary schools in Great Britain. They are:

1) comprehensive schools, which take pupils of all abilities without exams. In such schools pupils are often put into certain sets or groups, which are formed according to their abilities for technical or humanitarian subjects. Almost all senior pupils (around 90 per cent) go there;

2) grammar schools, which give secondary education of a very high standard. Entrance is based on the test of ability, usually at 11. Grammar schools are single sexed schools;

3) modern schools, which don't prepare pupils for universities. Education in such schools gives good prospects for practical jobs.

After five years of secondary education, at the age of 16, pupils take the General Certificate of Secondary Education (GCSE) examination. When they are in the third or in the fourth form, they begin to choose their exam subjects and prepare for them.

After finishing the fifth form pupils can make their choice: they may either leave school and go to a Further Education College or continue their education in the sixth form. Those who stay at school after GCSE, study for 2 more years for "A" (Advanced) Level Exams in two or three subjects which is necessary to get a place at one of British universities.

There are also about 500 private schools in Great Britain. Most of these schools are boarding ones, where children live as well as study. Education in such schools is very expensive, that's why only 5 per cent of schoolchildren attend them. Private schools are also called preparatory (for children up to 13 years old) and public schools (for pupils from 13 to 18 years old). Any pupil can enter the best university of the country after leaving this school. The most famous British public schools are Eton, Harrow and Winchester.

After leaving secondary school young people can apply to a university, a polytechnic or a college of further education.

There are 126 universities in Britain. They are divided into 5 types:

The Old ones, which were founded before the 19th century, such as Oxford and Cambridge;

The Red Brick, which were founded in the 19th or 20th century;

The Plate Glass, which were founded in 1960s;

The Open University It is the only university offering extramural education. Students learn subjects at home and then post ready exercises off to their tutors for marking;

The New ones. They are former polytechnic academies and colleges.

The best universities, in view of "The Times" and "The Guardian", are The University of Oxford, The University of Cambridge, London School of Economics, London Imperial College, London University College.

Universities usually select students basing on their A-level results and an interview.

After three years of study a university graduate get the Degree of a Bachelor of Arts, Science or Engineering. Many students then continue their studies for a Master's Degree and then a Doctor's Degree (PhD).

2. Now study some additional words and expressions in use when dwelling upon this topic.

Science – природничі науки

Art – образотворче мистецтво

core subject – головний предмет
comprehensive school – загальноосвітня школа
according to – у відповідності до
ability – здатність
grammar school – граматична школа
entrance – вступ
single sexed school – школа для хлопчиків і дівчаток (розділено за статтю)
modern school – сучасна школа
GCSE – іспит на сертифікат про отримання середньої освіти
"A" (advanced) Level Exam – іспиту рівня А (розширений)
private school – приватна школа
boarding school – школа-інтернат, школа-пансіон
preparatory school – підготовча приватна школа
to apply – подавати заяву
extramural – заочна, вечірня
polytechnic – політехнічний
tutor – куратор, викладач
Degree of a Bachelor – ступінь бакалавра
Master's Degree – ступінь магістра
Doctor's Degree – докторська ступінь

3. Answer in writing the following questions:

When do British boys and girls begin to go to school?
What subjects do they study at school?
How long does secondary education last?
What subjects are called "core" subjects?
At what age do children have their exams?
What's the difference between modern and grammar schools?
What are private schools?
Would you like to study in Britain? Why?
What types of British universities do you know?

4. Dwell upon the topic "Education in Great Britain"

Topic 22. Education in the USA.

1. Read the text. Try to translate it using the words given below:

trimester – триместр
quarter – чверть
respectively – відповідно
to vary – змінюватися
to consist of – складатися з
elementary education – початкова освіта
higher education – вища освіта

notion – визначення

preschool education – дошкільна освіта

to get acquainted with – знайомитися з

to aim – бути націленим

to acquire the experience of association – отримати досвід спілкування

grade – клас

General History – загальна історія

junior – студент на передостанньому році коледжу або учень 11 класу середньої школи

senior – студент на останньому році коледжу або учень 12 класу середньої школи

majority – більшість

to be engaged in – займатися чимось

research work – науково-дослідницька робота

Education in the United States of America is compulsory for children from the age of 6 till 16 (or 18). It involves 12 years of schooling. A school year starts at the end of August or at the beginning of September and ends in late June or early July. The whole school year is divided into three terms/trimesters or four quarters. American students have winter, spring and summer holidays which last 2 or 3 weeks and 6 or 8 weeks, respectively. The length of the school year varies among the states as well as the day length. Students go to school 5 days a week.

The American education system consists of 3 basic components: elementary, secondary and higher education. There is also such a notion as preschool education. At the age of 4 or 5 children just get acquainted with the formal education in a nursery school. The preschool education programme aims to prepare children for elementary school through playing and help them to acquire the experience of association. It lasts for one year. Then they go to the first grade (or grade 1).

Elementary education starts when pupils are 6 years old. The programme of studies in the elementary school includes the following subjects: English, Arithmetic, Geography, History of the USA, Natural sciences, Physical Training, Singing, Drawing, wood or metal work. The education is mostly concentrated on the basic skills (speaking, reading, writing and arithmetic). Sometimes children also learn some foreign languages, general history and such new subjects as drug and sex education. The main goal of elementary education is the general intellectual, social and physical development of a pupil from 5 to 12 or 15 years old.

Secondary education begins when children move on to high or secondary school in the ninth grade, where they continue their studies until the twelfth grade. The secondary school curriculum is built around specific subjects rather than general skills. Although there is always a number of basic subjects in the curriculum: English, Mathematics, Science, Social Studies and Physical Education, the students have an opportunity to learn some elective subjects, which are not necessary for everybody. After the first two years of education they can select subjects according to their professional interests. The electives are to be connected with the students'

future work or further education at university or college. Every high school has a special teacher – a guidance counselor who helps the students to choose these elective subjects. Moreover, he helps them with some social problems, too. The elective courses are different in various schools.

Members of each grade in high school have special names: students in the ninth grade are called freshmen, tenth graders are called sophomores, eleventh graders are juniors and as for twelfth graders, they are seniors.

After graduating from high schools the majority of the Americans go on studying at higher education establishments. In universities they have to study for four years to get a bachelor's degree. In order to get a master's degree they must study two years more and, besides, be engaged in a research work.

2. Now study some additional words and expressions in use when dwelling upon this topic.

sex and drug education – статеве виховання та уроки про соціальну роль наркотиків

skill – навичка

goal – ціль

curriculum – розклад, навчальний план

specific – конкретний, певний

Social Studies – суспільні науки

opportunity – можливість

elective subject – предмети за вибором

guidance counsellor – радник з профорієнтації

various – різноманітний

freshman – новачок

sophomore – студент другого року навчання в коледжі або учень 10 класі школи

3. Answer in writing the following questions:

At what age do American students start and finish their compulsory education?

How are the school years called in the United States?

The length of the school year varies among the states, doesn't it?

What are the basic components of American education?

Do all children have to attend a nursery school?

When does elementary education start?

What is the main aim of elementary education?

The secondary school curriculum doesn't imply a number of basic subjects, does it?

What are elective subjects?

Who is a guidance counsellor?

4. Dwell upon the topic “Education in the USA”

Topic 23. The peculiarities of the Ukrainian educational system.

1. Read the text. Try to translate it using the words given below:

system – система

to include – включати

technical school – технікум

the humanities – гуманітарні науки

the sciences – природознавчі науки

The system of secondary education in Ukraine includes primary forms and junior and senior secondary forms. Children usually go to school at the age of 6 or 7. There are some preschool institutions, like nursery schools or kindergartens, but they are not obligatory. Primary forms comprise 1 to 4 forms. Junior secondary forms comprise 5 to 9 forms. After the 9th form children can enter technical schools of different types. Those who want to enter higher educational institutions should complete 10–11 forms. Students can also enter higher educational institutions after graduating from specialized colleges or lyceums. They prepare students in different fields, whether the humanities or the sciences. Some of them are organized under the authorities of higher educational establishments. The system of higher education is presented by universities, polytechnic institutes or specialized institutes. Universities offer a five-year course of study and usually have from six to twelve departments. Institutes train specialists for industry, agriculture and economy. Most of them have been conferred the status of Academy or University recently. Students are also offered postgraduate education and scientific research work. Nowadays due to the state of our national economy not many young people are engaged in the research work. But still in some fields of science there are outstanding discoveries and research papers.

Some universities and institutes have refresher courses. Recently a great number of private educational establishments have appeared. Some institutions have fee-paying groups or departments. The students may get education there at the same high level as in the state institutions.

2. Now study some additional words and expressions in use when dwelling upon this topic.

citizen – громадянин

to guarantee – гарантувати

free education – безкоштовна освіта

mainly – в основному

the rest – інші

institution of higher learning (education) – ВНЗ

level – рівень

to establish – створювати, організовувати

3. Answer in writing the following questions:

What does the system of secondary education in Ukraine include?

At what age do children go to school?

What is the system of higher education presented by?
Whom do the institutes train?
Do we have private educational establishments in Ukraine?

4. Dwell upon the topic “The peculiarities of the Ukrainian educational system.”

Topic 24. The South Ukrainian National Pedagogical University named after K. D. Ushynsky.

1. Read the text. Try to translate it using the words given below:

in order to – для того, щоб
to award – нагороджувати
award – винагорода
distinguished – заслужений
staff – штат
pride – гордість

The University is one of the oldest education institutions of Ukraine, it is the first Pedagogical establishment created in the south of Ukraine. The international authority of the University in developing modern teacher training system, scientific research in fundamental and applied sciences is high enough.

Almost 100 thousand teachers, who work in our country and abroad, have been trained at the university during the period of its existence. Among the graduates there are more than two thousand people who are awarded the titles of Distinguished and Honored workers in education, science, culture and sports.

The students, masters, postgraduate students, persons working for a doctor's degree from 23 countries are taught at the university.

The future teachers' professional training in 40 qualifications, specialties and specializations is carried out by more than 1000 educators and research workers; about 400 persons of the staff have the scientific degree of a doctor, are awarded honorable titles in different fields of science, education, culture, arts and sports.

There are 17 scientific schools that are known in Ukraine and the World and 7 Qualification Scientific Boards authorized to award the PhD degree.

The students and graduates are the pride of the University, among them there are 5 Heroes of the USSR and Ukraine, National teachers, world known distinguished scholars, writers, artists, sportsmen, who won 22 gold medals in the Olympic Games.

The University has joined the Association of European Universities, the East-European Universities Network, the International Association of Pedagogical Universities of Central and Eastern Europe, it is a member of a well-known European organization “Observatory of the Magna Charta”. It cooperates with more than 100 educational establishments of Ukraine and many Universities of Europe, Asia and the USA.

Almost 700 foreign citizens are taught at the University. They master the curriculum successfully in order to get a decent profession which will help them to find their place in the dynamic day world.

The education is carried out in the following areas and specialties.

The educational and qualification degree of “Bachelor”:

Pre-school Education; Primary Education; Technology Education; Correction Education Social Pedagogics, Physical Training, Choreography, Musical Art, Fine Arts, Philosophy, History, Philology, Psychology, Mathematics, Physics, Computer science;

The educational and qualification degree of “Master” and “Specialist”:

Pre-school Education; Primary Education; Technology Education; Correction Education; Social Pedagogics; Physical Training; Choreography; Musical Art; Fine Art; Philosophy; History; Psychology; the Ukrainian Language and Literature; Language and Literature (English, German); Translation (English); Mathematics; Physics; Computer Science; Administration of an Educational Institution.

The representatives from many countries are taught at the university postgraduate department. Among the authors who have successfully defended their dissertations are the citizens of China, the USA, Cyprus.

2. Now study some additional words and expressions in use when dwelling upon this topic.

to leave (past left, p.p. left) school – закінчувати школу

to go (past went, p.p. gone) into business – займатися бізнесом

professional training – професійна підготовка

huge – дуже великий

to take (past took, p.p. taken) time – не поспішати

dilemma – дилема, незручне становище

to follow smb. footsteps – слідувати по стопах

to persuade – переконувати

wide – широкий, великий

demand – попит, запитання

employment market – ринок праці

to consider – вважати

easygoing – той, що легко ладить з людьми

smart – розумний

to require – вимагати

profound – глибокий

knowledge – знання, пізнання

extraordinary – екстраординарний, неординарний, незвичний

prestigious – престижний

to develop – розвивати, поліпшувати

desire – мрія, бажання

responsibility – відповідальність

bachelor degree – ступінь бакалавра

post-graduate course – аспірантура
to graduate from – закінчувати
competence – компетенція

3. Answer in writing the following questions:

What do you know about our University?

Where do people enter if they want to get a professional training?

Why do some parents persuade their kids to enter local colleges and universities or institutes?

Why should we take our time while choosing our future profession?

What does the teacher's work require?

Why have you decided to become a teacher?

4. Dwell upon the topic “The South Ukrainian National Pedagogical University named after K. D. Ushinsky.”

Topic 25. Modern kinds of sport and games.

1. Read the text. Try to translate it using the words given below:

fit – в хорошій формі

on personal initiative – з особистої ініціативи

to pay attention to – звертати увагу на

kindergarten – дитячий садок

People all over the world are fond of sports and games. Sport makes people healthy, keeps them fit, more organized and better disciplined. It unites people of different classes and nationalities. Many people do sports on their personal initiative. They go in for skiing, skating, table tennis, swimming, volley-ball, football, body-building, etc. All necessary facilities are provided for them: stadiums, sport grounds, swimming pools, skating rinks, skiing stations, football fields.

Sport is paid much attention to in our educational establishments. Gymnastics is a part of children's daily activities in the kindergartens. Physical culture is a compulsory subject at schools and colleges.

Children and grown-ups must take care of their health and do morning exercises regularly.

There are some popular kinds of sports in our country: football, volley-ball, hockey, gymnastics, skiing, skating. Athletics is one of the most popular kinds of sports. It includes such kinds of sports as: running, jumping and others. Everybody may choose the sport he (or she) is interested in.

There are summer and winter sports.

My favourite sport is swimming. I go to the swimming-pool twice a week, but I prefer to rest by the lake or the river and swim there. My friend goes in for boxing. He is a good boxer and he is a brave and courageous boy. His hobby helps him in his everyday life.

2. Now study some additional words and expressions in use when dwelling upon this topic.

to jog – біг підтюпцем
section – секція
competition – змагання
participant – учасник
to go in for sports – займатися спортом
to catch cold – захворіти застудою
to take care – берегти, піклуватися
to include – включати
to choose – обирати
to prefer – віддавати перевагу
courageous – хоробрий

3. Answer in writing the following questions:

Do you do your morning exercises every day?
How do children and grown-ups take care of their health?
Do you go in for sports?
What is your favourite sport?
Where do you prefer to rest?
Do your friends go in for sports?
Do you like winter or summer sports?
Our hobbies help us in our life, don't they?

4. Dwell upon the topic “Modern kinds of sport and games.”

Topic 26. The relationships between children and parents.

1. Read the text. Try to translate it using the words given below:

generation gap – конфлікт поколінь, чи проблема батьків і дітей
definition – визначення
to be aware of – знати щось, бути у курсі
difference – розбіжності, різниця
to deal with – мати справу з
to keep in mind – розуміти, зрозуміти
several – декілька
world outlook – світогляд
patience – терпіння

to devote – присвячувати
attitude – відношення
close relative – близький родич
to give birth to a baby – народити дитину
to neglect – нехтувати, ігнорувати, кидати
upbringing – виховання
guidance – керівництво
to involve – залучати
to commit violence – допускати насильство
to commit crime – скоювати злочин
alcohol addicted – бути залежним від алкоголю
drug addicted – бути залежним від наркотиків
strict – суворий
freedom – свобода
pariah – вигнанець
peer – ровесник
ban – заборона
to increase – збільшуватися
insolent – зухвалий
defiant – непокірний
lying – брехливість
to force – змушувати
to punish – карати
to put on a make-up – робити макіяж
to rebel against discipline – повставати проти дисципліни
family values – родинні цінності
inappropriate – непідходящий
to dye one's hair – фарбувати волосся
inconceivable – немислимий
independence – незалежність
to establish one's identity – встановити свою особистість
to treat – обходитися, поводити себе

Do you know what a generation gap is? Even if you don't know the particular definition, you are aware of this problem, basing on your own experience. Generation gap is a popular term used to describe serious differences between people of two generations.

To realize how to deal with it, you should keep in mind that generation gap includes several aspects: children must know as much as possible about their parents and parents – about the world outlook of their children, about relations between brothers and sisters, and also about the attitude to them of close relatives on both sides – father's and mother's.

Children demand a great deal of attention, time and patience, so, if you are not ready to devote all that to your baby, it is better not to hurry. There are many families

where both parents keep working after giving birth to their baby. It is similar to the situation with a single-parent family, when a father or a mother hardly have enough time and neglect their children's upbringing. In such cases most of the time the child has to spend on his own or with his friends. Due to the fact that he has not got any guidance from his parents he may be involved in some bad companies which commit violence or even crime and become alcohol or drug addicted. When the parents discover that, it's usually too late to change anything.

On the other hand, there is a different situation when the parents treat their children too strict and don't give them any freedom at all. In this case the children may become pariahs among their peers. Constant bans may increase the risk that the child will grow up insolent and defiant. This causes another big problem – lying. The child is forced to lie to the parents because of the fear to be punished. It can be anything from putting on make-up in the girls' room at school to stealing.

Some children rebel against discipline and family values. They listen to a loud music, wear inappropriate, to their parents' mind, clothes, dye their hair in inconceivable colours, have all their bodies pierced and tattooed trying to show their independence and establish their identity. They want to be treated as adults, but they are not ready to take all the necessary responsibilities. It doesn't mean that your child is bad and he will become a criminal. Of course, not! It only means that your child is in his transitional age and he is in need of your understanding and support.

But how to handle such behaviour? Parents should become his close friends. First of all they should learn to respect his interests. Try to speak with him as often as possible, offer some parent-child activities like shopping or going in for sports. It is worth involving the child in discussing some family questions, just to show that he is a full member of the family. Moreover, children in their teens are very vulnerable when they are criticized in public, so try to avoid it. Parents should always be honest and sincere with their child; otherwise it would be unfair to require the same from him.

Too authoritarian parents can't do any good to their children as well as parents who overindulge all the child's caprices. Overindulgence may lead to the same results as negligence. There are parents who are afraid of hurting the child by banning something when it is necessary. Such parents risk becoming powerless in the family and losing control over their children who may become spoiled and capricious.

It demands to make a great effort from both parents and children to reach mutual understanding. There are many different opinions on the question of treating children if they disobey their parents, but every parent should decide for himself what will be best for his child and set him on the right path.

2. Now study some additional words and expressions in use when dwelling upon this topic.

responsibility – відповідальність

transitional age – перехідний вік

to handle a behaviour – справлятися з поведінкою

full member – дійсний член

moreover – більш того
to be in one's teens – бути підлітком
vulnerable – чуттєвий, вразливий
to avoid – уникати
unfair – несправедливий
authoritarian – владний
to overindulge – надмірно потурати
negligence – нехтування
to spoil a child – зіпсувати дитину
capricious – капризний
effort – зусилля
mutual understanding – взаєморозуміння
to disobey – не слухатися
to set smb. on the right path – направити когось на вірний шлях

3. Answer in writing the following questions:

Give your explanation of the notion "generation gap".

How do you think, which is the tensest period in the relationships between parents and their children?

What type of behaviour is usual for adolescents?

Have you noticed any changes in your own behaviour during the last years?

How would you characterize your relations with your parents?

Do you like to spend time with your family?

What is, in your opinion, the basis of healthy and peaceful relationship between parents and children?

Do you approve of the way your parents brought you up?

What would you like to change in the way your parents brought you up?

4. Dwell upon the topic "The relationships between children and parents."

Topic 27. Punishing children.

1. Read the text. Try to translate it using the words given below:

to punish-карати

to bring up-виховувати

behaviour-поведінка

relationship-відносини

to spoil-зіпсувати

to decide-вирішувати

to develop-розвивати

experience-досвід

respect-повага

Does punishing children work? Does punishment change childrens behaviour? They do not learn how to make choices; they do not learn how to decide what is good for them and for those who are important to them. Children who are regularly punished learn to fear their parents. They learn how to hide their behaviours from their parents. In order to protect themselves they develop a social pose to hide their secret misbehaviours.

Many parents find it difficult to understand what their children need. Here are some helpful points. Remember! You cannot spoil new-babies. They have no idea about the word. Crying is your babies only language. If you feel you cannot cope with your baby crying, ask a friend or a neighbour to take over, even for an hour. Understanding between the members of the family is very important relationship. Tenderness, warm-heartedness and respect must always be present in the family to make it friendly. A lot of activities help members of the family to be friendly: discussing all the family plans together, visiting museums, theatre, exhibitions and exchanging opinions about them and other. You must show your love and attention in everyday life. It is very important to visit relatives on holidays, on birthdays and develop close relationship. When the family is friendly, everybody is happy. There are different opinions on how to bring up children. In my opinion family is one of the most important things in our life. It is very important to tell your child you love him every day. Teach your child about your faith and beliefs. Tell what you believe and why. For younger children, very useful, reading a favourite bedtime book. Let your children help you. Play with your children. Play with dolls, ball, sing songs and other. It does not matter what you play, just enjoy each other! Let kids see your silly side. Eat meals together as a family.

2. Now study some additional words and expressions in use when dwelling upon this topic.

to honour – поважати

dead – неживий, мертвий

misunderstanding – невірне розуміння

adulthood – зрілість, дорослість; стан зрілості тіла

adolescence – підлітковий вік, юність

values – гідність, цінність

generation – покоління

a gap – розбіг, глибокий розбіг у погляді

drug – наркотик

juvenile delinquent – неповнолітній злочинець

to be convinced – бути впевненим

rescue – рятування, порятунок

to dial – набирати номер, звонити

way out – вихід зі стану

3. Answer in writing the following questions:

What is the reason of unhappy family?

When do teenagers experience conflicts?
What sets a conflict between two generations?
What problems do teens face?
What do teenagers especially need at that age?
How should parents help their children?
What other means come to their rescue?
What do we need not to have problems in the family?

4. Dwell upon the topic “Punishing children.”

Topic 28. Shopping.

1. Read the text. Try to translate it using the words given below:

supermarket – супермаркет

store – магазин, відділ

various – різноманітність

under one roof – під одним дахом

to be composed of... – складатися з чогось

ready-weighed and packed – у розфасованому та запакованому вигляді

fabrics – тканини

escalator – підйомник

customer – покупець

When we want to buy something, we go to a shop. There are many kinds of shops in every town or city, but most of them have a food supermarket, a department store, men's and women's clothing stores, grocery, a bakery and a butchery.

I like to do my shopping at big department stores and supermarkets. They sell various goods under one roof and this is very convenient. A department store, for example, true to its name, is composed of many departments: readymade clothes, fabrics, shoes, sports goods, toys, china and glass, electric appliances, cosmetics, linen, curtains, cameras, records, etc. You can buy everything you like there.

There are also escalators in big stores which take customers to different floors. The things for sale are on the counters so that they can be easily seen. In the women's clothing department you can find dresses, costumes, blouses, skirts, coats, beautiful underwear and many other things. In the men's clothing department you can choose suits, trousers, overcoats, ties, etc.

In the knitwear department one can buy sweaters, cardigans, short-sleeved and long-sleeved pullovers, woollen jackets. In the perfumery they sell face cream and powder, lipstick, lotions and shampoos.

In a food supermarket we can also buy many different things at once: sausages, fish, sugar, macaroni, flour, cereals, tea. At the butcher's there is a wide choice of meat and poultry. At the bakery you buy brown and white bread, rolls, biscuits.

Another shop we frequently go to is the greengrocery which is stocked by cabbage, potatoes, onions, cucumbers, carrots, beetroots, green peas and what not.

Everything is sold here ready-weighed and packed. If you call round at a dairy you can buy milk, cream, cheese, butter and many other products.

The methods of shopping may vary. It may be a self-service shop where the customer goes from counter to counter selecting and putting into a basket what he wishes to buy. Then he takes the basket to the check-out counter, where the prices of the purchases are added up. If it is not a self-service shop, and most small shops are not, the shop-assistant helps the customer in finding what he wants. You pay money to the cashier and he gives you back the change.

2. Now study some additional words and expressions in use when dwelling upon this topic.

grocer's – бакалія
greengrocer's – овочевий магазин
to run out of smth. – закінчитися, бути обмеж
queue – черга
counter – прилавок
a shop assistant – продавець
to weigh – зважувати
loaf – коровай
roll, bun – булка
purchase – покупка
to cost (cost, cost) – коштувати
to decide – вирішувати
to drop in at smth., to call at smth. – заходити
to look for sth – шукати
to enter – заходити (до)
fantastic – фантастичний
frock – сукня
leather – шкіра, шкіряний
sleeve – рукав
to be the latest fashion – бути в моді
sure – впевнений
cash-desk – каса
cashier – касир
receipt – товарний чек

3. Answer in writing the following questions:

What do we do when we want to buy something?
What kinds of shops are there in every town?
Where do you like to do your shopping?
What departments is a department store composed of?
Where are the things for sale?
What can we buy in the knitwear department?
What can we buy in a food supermarket?

What methods of shopping are there?

4. Dwell upon the topic “Shopping.”

Topic 29. Theatre.

1. Read the text. Try to translate it using the words given below:

command a view – добре видно
gangway seats – місця поруч з проходом
front row – перший ряд
back row – останній ряд
stalls – партер
pit – місця за креслами
dress circle – бельєтаж
upper circle, balcony – балкон
gallery – галерка
box – ложа
book a seat – купити квиток
gangway (aisle) – прохід
booking-office/box-office – театральна каса
players – актори
theatrical company – трупа
acting world – театральний світ
revive – знов починати
stage-manager (director) – режисер
musical director – диригент
performance is a success (a failure) – спектакль має успіх (провалився)
scene is laid... – дія відбувається
impress – справити враження
be absolutely thrilled with – прийти в повний захват
partner – діяти як партнер
rose interest – викликати цікавість
preview – передчасний перегляд
subject to availability – якщо квитки є у продажі
lyrics – текст пісень
concessions – знижки
restricted view – місця, з яких не видно всю сцену
interval – антракт
curtain falls (drops) – завіса опускається
ring down the curtain – опустити завісу
ring up the curtain – підняти завісу
good curtain – гарне закінчення акту (п'єси)
behind the curtain – за лаштунками
lights go up (down) – світло вмикається (вимикається)

dressling-room – акторська кімната
prompt-box – суфлерська будка
prompter – суфлер

People live a very busy life nowadays, so they have little time to spare. Still they try their best to make use of those rare hours of leisure. Some people find it a pleasure to go to the theatre. The theatre is one of the most ancient kinds of arts. For centuries people have come to the theatre for different aims: to relax, to be amused and entertained, to have a good laugh, to enjoy the acting of their favourite actors and actresses.

Some people like drama, others are fond of musical comedy. The subtlest theatre-lovers prefer ballet and opera. In our country there are a lot of theatres: big and small, new and old, famous and not very well known. Kiev is at the center of the theatre world in Ukraine. There are numerous venues for a variety of theatre performances scattered throughout the city. From intricate ballet and vibrant opera performances, to humorous comedy shows and alternative plays, there is something to suit everyone in Kiev. New theatre companies have come onto the scene and works are far more diversified than in the past. Unfortunately, financial restraints have hampered some development of theatre in Ukraine; however, directors are becoming more adept at obtaining sponsorships.

Comedies are most popular with local audiences and dramas often take a back seat to more light-hearted entertainment. Theatre tickets in Ukraine are relatively inexpensive and are fantastic for those traveling on a tight budget. It may, in some respects, be struggling to draw large audiences in the electronic age, but the age-old art of theatre will never die and has quite a bright future ahead of it in Ukraine.

In this section of Ukraine.com you can find out more about the many theatres in Ukraine, which will hopefully assist you when deciding where to go for a performance or two whilst staying in the country. For those who enjoy a taste of traditional theatre and are fans of opera or ballet, the T.G. Shevchenko National Opera and Ballet Theatre is the place to go.

All these and lots of other theatres present a great variety of shows. That makes a spectator feel somewhat at a loss what theatre to choose. In this case it may turn out useful to consult a billboard and find out what and where is on. Sometimes you may face a difficulty of another kind: that is of getting tickets. If you don't feel like standing in a queue for tickets at the box-office, you may book them beforehand.

Ticket prices vary according to the seats. The better seats at the theatre are in the stalls and in the dress circle. They are rather expensive seats. Boxes, of course, are the best seats and the most expensive, too. Those people, who are short of money, take seats in the gallery, in the balcony or in the upper balcony. Tickets for afternoon performances are cheaper than those for evening performances.

2. Now study some additional words and expressions in use when dwelling upon this topic.

stage door – службовий вхід

attendants – обслуговуючий персонал
cloak-room – гардероб
check – номерок
leading performers – актори, що грають головні (ведучі) ролі
minor characters – другорядні діючі особи
cast – склад виконавців
be in the cast – бути у складі виконавців
act – грати
create a role – створювати роль
play a role – грати (виконувати) роль
curtain call – виклик актора на сцену оплесками
receive a curtain call – виходити на оплески
encore – біс
make-up – грим
rehearse – репетувати
rehearsal – репетиція
dress-rehearsal – генеральна репетиція
on tour – на гастролях
gala – святковий спектакль
first night – прем'єра
repertoire – репертуар
script – текст п'єси
libretto – лібрето
stage directions – надруковані інструкції для акторів
programme – програма
stage version – інсценування
scenery, settings – декорації
do the decor – писати декорації
have a long, short run – йти довго, недовго

3. Answer in writing the following questions:

Are you a frequent theatregoer?

When did you visit the theatre first?

What were your impressions?

Have you ever been to the National Opera and Ballet Theatre?

4. Dwell upon the topic "Theatre."

Topic 30. Cinema.

1. Read the text. Try to translate it using the words given below:

to spend one's leisure time – витрачати свій вільний час

movie audience – кіноаудиторія, кіноглядачі

predominantly – в основному, головним чином

to emerge – з’являтися
cinema-going habit – звичка ходити в кіно
a settlement – селище
adventures – пригоди
grown-ups – дорослі
not without pleasure – не без задоволення
feature film – художній фільм
genre – жанр
western – вестерн
thriller – триллер

Cinema plays an important role in the life of any society. It is an available popular form of art. Lots of people find going to the cinema one of the best ways of spending their leisure time. The movie audience is predominantly a young one.

Due to numerous video facilities, cinema attendances have declined sharply. But there is no denying the fact that the cinema-going habit is still a strong one.

No matter how large the place you live in is (whether it's a big city or a small provincial town, or even a settlement) there's most likely to be a cinema there.

There are such genres of feature films as the western, the thriller, the musical, the drama and the comedy. The performance lasts for two or three hours and most cinemas have at least 4 performances a day. There is no doubt that a good cinema show is an excellent entertainment and quite cheap. Of late cinema screens in this country have been dominated by films produced in the USA. And this tendency is growing.

As for me, I'm fond of going to the cinema. It's a pity; I don't always have time for it. It's an open secret that we live in a very difficult time now. But people do need something amusing and pleasant, something to laugh at. That's why I give my preference to comedies. The last comedy, I saw, is «Crocodile Dandy». The film tells about amusing adventures of a young lovely woman – reporter and a strong and brave crocodile hunter. At first, their relations were not friendly. She even looked down on him and he in return neglected her. But after he rescued her out of some difficult situations, their relations became friendlier. A happy end is an essential feature of American films. The same is true of this comedy. The main characters fall in love with each other in the end of the film.

2. Now study some additional words and expressions in use when dwelling upon this topic.

performance – сеанс
entertainment – розвага
cinema screens – кіноекран
to dominate – займати ведуче місце
to be fond of – любити, захоплюватися
it's a pity – на жаль
it's an open secret – не є таємницею ні для кого, що

to give preference to smth. – віддавати перевагу чомусь
amusing adventures – кумедні пригоди
woman-reporter – жінка-репортер
hunter – мисливець
to look down on smb. – дивитися зверху, зневажати
to rescue smb. out of smth. – рятувати когось
an essential feature – важлива риса
to fall in love with each other – закохатися

3. Answer in writing the following questions:

How do lots of people find going to the cinema?
Who makes up the movie audience?
Why have cinema attendances declined sharply?
Is the cinema-going habit still a strong one?
What genres of feature films are there?
How many performances have many cinemas a day?
What films have cinema screens in this country been dominated by?
Are you fond of going to the cinema?
In what time do we live now?
What do you give your preference to?
What does the film you saw last tell?
What is an essential feature of American films?

4. Dwell upon the topic “Cinema.”

Topic 31. THE NATIONAL SYMBOLS OF UKRAINE.

1. Read the text. Try to translate it using the words given below:

National Emblem– Державний Герб
national anthem – Державний Гімн
to incorporate– включати до складу
invasion– вторгнення, навала, напад
to revive– відроджувати
crest– герб (на прапорах)
trident– тризуб(ець)
insignia– емблема
mace– жезл
to render– відтворювати, зображувати
A. D. [ei di:] Anno Domini ['ænou'dɒmɪnaɪ] – нової ери
ambassador– посол; посланник
to seal– скріплювати печаткою; печатка
to stamp– карбувати
to represent– відображати; символізувати
celestial– небесний
to endorse – схвалювати

The Constitution states that the national symbols of Ukraine shall be the National Flag, the National Emblem and the National Anthem.

The Ukrainian flag consists of two horizontal stripes of equal width. The top is blue, the bottom is yellow. Blue and yellow, the colours of the sky, mountains, streams, and golden fields had symbolized Kyivan Rus' long before the introduction of Christianity. With the acceptance of Christianity, blue and gold were incorporated into church symbolism. After the Mongol-Tatar invasion in the 1200s, the use of blue and gold was interrupted to be revived again in church ornaments and city crests some time later. The emblem of the city of Myrhorod, for example, was a gold trident over a blue background. Another city, Pryluky, used the head of an ox in gold over a blue background as its insignia. And in Lubny the city emblem pictured a hand holding a golden mace over a blue background. The banners of the Cossacks (XVII century) were blue with gold stars, a gold cross or with pictures of saints rendered in gold.

The National Emblem is a trident. The first image of a trident appeared in the IX century A.D. When Ihor, Prince of Kyivan Rus' from 912 to 945, sent ambassadors to sign a treaty with the Byzantine emperor, they sealed the document with a trident. As the official emblem of the Kyivan princes, the trident was stamped on coins and seals; it was depicted on porcelain and in frescos. It is thought that the trident represented -the division of the world into three spheres: the earthly, the celestial and the spiritual – as well as the union of the three natural elements: air, water and earth. The trident was endorsed as the National Emblem of Ukraine, and the blue and yellow flag – as the National Flag of Ukraine – by the Verkhovna Rada in 1992.

The lyrics to the anthem of Ukraine were written by Pavlo Chubynsky – a scientist and poet – in 1862. The music was composed by M. Verbytsky.

2. Now study some additional words and expressions in use when dwelling upon this topic.

to adopt – приймати

establishment – встановлення

Unitarian – унітарний, єдиний

inviolable – недоторканий, непорушний

justice – правосуддя, юстиція

to facilitate – сприяти

censorship – цензура

self-determination – самовизначення

to prescribe – приписувати

on behalf of – від імені

comprehensive – всебічний

fundamental Law – основний закон

to secure – забезпечувати, гарантувати

legislative – законодавчий

executive – виконавчий
responsibility – відповідальність
judicial – юридичний, законний
source – джерело
unfettered – безперешкодний, вільний
compulsory – обов’язковий

3. Answer in writing the following questions:

1. What are the national symbols of Ukraine?
2. Can you describe the National Flag?
3. Where were the blue and golden colours incorporated?
4. What emblems of the cities do you know?
5. What is the National Emblem?
6. Why was trident chosen to be the emblem?
7. When were the Emblem and the Flag of Ukraine endorsed?
8. Who wrote the lyrics and music to the Anthem of Ukraine?

4. Dwell upon the topic “THE NATIONAL SYMBOLS OF UKRAINE.”

Stage 4.

Texts on specializations

1. What Is Psychology?

Psychology is the scientific study of mental processes and behaviour. Psychologists observe and record how people and other animals relate to one another and to the environment. They look for patterns that will help them understand and predict behaviour, and they use scientific methods to test their ideas. Through such studies, psychologists have learned much that can help people fulfill their potential as human beings and increase understanding between individuals, groups, nations, and cultures.

Psychology is a broad field that explores a variety of questions about thoughts, feelings, and actions. Psychologists ask such questions as: "How do we see, hear, smell, taste, and feel? What enables us to learn, think, and remember, and why do we forget? What activities distinguish human beings from other animals? What abilities are we born with, and which must we learn? How much does the mind affect the body, and how does the body affect the mind? For example, can we change our heart rate or temperature just by thinking about doing so? What can our dreams tell us about our needs, wishes, and desires? Why do we like the people we like? What is mental illness?"

The research findings of psychologists have greatly increased our understanding of why people behave as they do. For example, psychologists have discovered much about how personality develops and how to promote healthy development. They have some knowledge of how to help people change bad habits

and how to help students learn. They understand some of the conditions that can make workers more productive. A great deal remains to be discovered. Nevertheless, insights provided by psychology can help people function better as individuals, friends, family members, and workers.

Ключові слова (Key words)

1. psychology	психологія
2. scientific	науковий
3. study	дослідження, вивчення
4. mental	розумовий, психічний
5. behaviour	поведінка
6. environment	навколишнє середовище
7. pattern	зразок
8. human being	людина
9. thought	думка
10. feeling	почуття
11. action	дія
12. mind	розум
13. dream	сон, мрія
14. desire	бажання
15. mental illness	психічний розлад
16. research	дослідження
17. psychologist	психолог
18. personality	особистість
19. habit	звичка
20. insight	здатність розуміти психічні процеси, ставити перед собою проблемну ситуацію, раптово знаходити рішення (на основі досвіда та інтуїції)

Дайте відповідь на питання, ґрунтуючись на змісті прочитаного тексту.

- What is psychology?
- What do psychologists do?
- What does psychology explore?
- What kind of questions do psychologists ask?
- Why do we need psychological research?
- How can psychology help us?
- Why do you want to become a professional psychologist?
- What is your favourite topic in psychology?
- When do you think a person should consult a psychologist?

2. What is Sociology?

The sociologist has a distinctive way of examining human interactions. **Sociology** is the systematic study of social behavior and human groups. It focuses primarily on the influence of social relationships upon people's attitudes and behavior

and on how societies are established and change. As a field of study, sociology has an extremely broad scope and it deals with families, gangs, business firms, political parties, schools, religions, labor unions, etc. It is concerned with love, poverty, conformity, discrimination, illness, alienation, overpopulation and community.

The Sociological Perspective. In human society, newspapers, television and radio are the usual sources of information about such groups and problems. However, while the basic function of journalists is to report the news, sociologists bring a different type of understanding to such issues. The perspective of sociology involves seeing through the outside appearances of people's actions and organizations.

One major goal of this perspective is to identify patterns of and influences on social behavior. For example, sociologists study the passionate desire of movie or rock fans to see in person, to talk with, even to grab the clothing of a star. Why do people feel this need so powerfully?

The sociological perspective attempts to provide explanations for such patterns. Sociologists are not content to just recognize that millions of people want to meet stars, rather they examine the shared feelings and behavior of fans within the larger social context of human culture.

The Sociological Imagination. In attempting to understand social behavior, sociologists rely on unusual type of creative thinking, **sociological imagination**, i.e. an awareness of the relationship between an individual and the society. Thus instead of simply accepting the fact that movie stars and rock stars are the «royalty» of human society, we could ask, in a more critical sense, why we are not as interested in meeting outstanding scientists, or elementary school teachers, or architects. Sociological imagination can bring new understanding to daily life around us.

Sociology and Social Sciences. The term **science** refers to the body of knowledge obtained by methods based upon systematic observations. The sciences are commonly divided into natural and social sciences. **Natural science** is the study of the physical features of nature and the ways in which they interact and change. Astronomy, biology, chemistry, geology and physics are all natural sciences. **Social science** is the study of various aspects of human society. The social sciences include sociology, anthropology, economics, history, psychology and political sciences.

These academic disciplines have a common focus on the social behavior of people, yet each has a particular orientation in studying such behavior. Anthropologists usually study cultures of the past and preindustrial societies that remain in existence today. Economists explore the ways in which people produce and exchange goods and services. Historians are concerned with the peoples and events of the past and their significance for us today. Political scientists study international relations, the workings of government and the exercise of power and authority. Psychologists investigate personality and individual behavior. In contrast to other social sciences, sociology emphasizes the influence that society has on people's attitudes and behavior. Humans are social animals; therefore, sociologists scientifically examine our social relationships with other people.

To better illustrate the distinctive perspectives of the social sciences, let us examine sociological and psychological approaches to the issue of gambling. Viewed

from the perspective of psychology, gambling represents an escape into a fantasy world where great fortune can be attained easily. By contrast, sociologists focus on the social networks that develop among many gamblers. Participants in gambling establish friendship groups. For such persons gambling is a form of recreation and may even be their primary social activity. This example shows that by viewing social phenomena from several perspectives, we can enhance our understanding of human behavior.

Sociology and Common Sense. Human behavior is something about which we all have experience and at least a bit of knowledge from a source of wisdom, which is called common sense. In our daily life, we rely on common sense to get us through many unfamiliar situations. Unfortunately, this source of knowledge is not always reliable. For example, it was once considered common sense» to accept that the earth is flat.

Like other social scientists sociologists do not accept something as a fact because «everyone knows it». Instead, each piece of information must be tested and analyzed in relationship to other data. Yet, it is important to stress that such findings have been tested by researchers.

Ключові слова (Key words)

1. sociology	соціологія
2. sociological perspective	соціологічні перспективи
3. sociological imagination	соціологічна уява
4. science	наука,
5. natural science	природничі науки
6. social science	суспільні науки
7. common sense	здоровий глузд

Дайте відповідь на питання, ґрунтуючись на змісті прочитаного тексту.

What does sociology focus on as a field of study?

What and who does it deal with?

What differs the work of a journalist from that of a sociologist?

What are the main goals of the sociological perspective?

Why is the sociological imagination very important in doing sociological research?

What types are the sciences commonly divided into?

What social sciences do you know and what do they study?

What differs sociology from other social sciences?

Why should a social scientist view social phenomena from different perspectives?

What is common sense?

How should common sense be used by social scientists?

3. Five Things All Great Teachers Have In Common

The quality of someone's teaching does not just refer to how much information they manage to get into their student's heads or the results that they produce. It also refers to their technique and presentation. Many teachers have a fantastic amount of

knowledge that would be greatly useful to students, but they have no idea of how to express it. Great teaching often has less to do with wisdom and skills, but more to do with their attitude to their student, their subject and their work. This article explains the top five characteristics of great teachers, and how to incorporate them into your own lessons.

1. *Passion.* Without truly loving what you do it is impossible to be really good at what you do. If you don't adore your subject, then how can you expect your students to do the same? Never be afraid to show that you love what you are talking about, even if your students look at you like you are crazy when you discuss algebra with a look of love in your eyes. Your enthusiasm and interest will soon rub off on them.

2. *Creativity.* Students love a teacher who is able to make dull subjects more interesting by incorporating colorful and exciting printables into lessons or by making up games. Standardized tests and the constant offensive of new curriculums will be making this harder, but it is still extremely important. Simply teaching the given material to your students does make you a good teacher, but to be a great one, you have to be prepared to develop unique learning methods and custom lesson plans.

3. *Flexibility.* Being a teacher is a committed profession. If a student does badly on a test then you have to be prepared to offer yourself to tutor them after school. Make yourself available whenever you are requested and make this information public so that the students who need the most help know that they can get it.

4. *Integrate.* Everyday life is not left isolated, and neither should education. It doesn't matter if you are the only one in the entire school who is integrating, you should continue to do so. If you aren't quite ready explain complex algebra with music, then take small baby steps by integrating one lesson with another discipline and seeing how things go from there. If you search online there will be many teaching resources that will give you ideas that you can begin to build on. This skill is all about trial and error.

5. *Connection.* You cannot possibly hope to teach effectively without having a connection with your students. A solid and trustworthy connection needs to be built between yourself and each individual student that you teach. Strictly speaking, you are the representation of the knowledge that forms the connection. Over time, the students will come to trust you, but you have to be interesting. It was mentioned before that you have to possess true passion for your subject, but it should not be your only one. Take up hobbies such as writing, athletics or playing a musical instrument. That way you will have something in common with the students which help to break down any barriers in place by the student/teacher differences. You need to be able to connect with your students.

Ключові слова (Key words)

to be grateful	бути вдячним
to convince	переконати
to have a good command	добре володіти
to improve	поліпшити

to put into practice	застосовувати на практиці
to mock at	насміхатися
to do one's best	намагатися
attitude	ставлення

Дайте відповідь на питання, ґрунтуючись на змісті прочитаного тексту.

1. What is the most important teacher's quality?
2. What is (was) you favourite subject ? Why?
3. What did your teacher do to make the lessons interesting and entertaining?
4. Who convinced you that it is absolutely necessary choose your direction of study today?
5. What did you do at the lessons?
6. What do the teachers develop in their pupils?